

3Com Corporation 350 Campus Drive Marlborough, MA 01752-3064

Copyright © 1998–2005, 3Com Corporation. All rights reserved. No part of this documentation may be reproduced in any form or by any means or used to make any derivative work (such as translation, transformation, or adaptation) without written permission from 3Com Corporation.

3Com Corporation reserves the right to revise this documentation and to make changes in content from time to time without obligation on the part of 3Com Corporation to provide notification of such revision or change.

3Com Corporation provides this documentation without warranty, term, or condition of any kind, either implied or expressed, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties, terms, or conditions of merchantability, satisfactory quality, and fitness for a particular purpose. 3Com may make improvements or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this documentation at any time.

If there is any software on removable media described in this documentation, it is furnished under a license agreement included with the product as a separate document, in the hardcopy documentation, or on the removable media in a directory file named LICENSE.TXT or !LICENSE.TXT. If you are unable to locate a copy, please contact 3Com and a copy will be provided to you.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT LEGEND

If you are a United States government agency, then this documentation and the software described herein are provided to you subject to the following:

All technical data and computer software are commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. Software is delivered as "Commercial Computer Software" as defined in DFARS 252.227-7014 (June 1995) or as a "commercial item" as defined in FAR 2.101(a) and as such is provided with only such rights as are provided in 3Com's standard commercial license for the Software. Technical data is provided with limited rights only as provided in DFAR 252.227-7015 (Nov 1995) or FAR 52.227-14 (June 1987), whichever is applicable. You agree not to remove or deface any portion of any legend provided on any licensed program or documentation contained in, or delivered to you in conjunction with, this guide.

PATENT INFORMATION

NBX Telephones 3C10281PE, 3C10226PE, 3C10228IRPE, and 3C10248PE are covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents and other patent applications pending:

5,994,998; 6,140,911; 6,329,906; 6,496,105; 6,535,983; 6,483,203; 6,449,348; 6,212,195

TRADEMARKS

Unless otherwise indicated, 3Com registered trademarks are registered in the United States and may or may not be registered in other countries. 3Com, NBX, the 3Com logo, and SuperStack are registered trademarks of 3Com Corporation. NBX NetSet and pcXset are trademarks of 3Com Corporation.

Adobe is a trademark and Adobe Acrobat is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. InstallShield is a registered trademark of InstallShield Software Corporation. Internet Explorer, Microsoft, Windows, Windows 2000, and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Netscape and Netscape Navigator are registered trademarks of Netscape Communication Corporation in the United States and other countries. All other company and product names may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.

TECHNOLOGY ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm

Copyright © 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

libtar 2.1.11

Copyright © 1998-2003 University of Illinois Board of Trustees Copyright © 1998-2003 Mark D. Roth

All rights reserved.

Developed by:

Campus Information Technologies and Educational Services, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal with the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the names of Campus Information Technologies and Educational Services, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this Software without specific prior written permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE CONTRIBUTORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES, OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF, OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS WITH THE SOFTWARE.

OpenBSD: basename.c,v 1.4 1999/05/30 17:10:30 espie Exp

OpenBSD: dirname.c,v 1.4 1999/05/30 17:10:30 espie Exp

Copyright © 1997 Todd C. Miller <Todd.Miller@courtesan.com> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenBSD: fnmatch.c,v 1.6 1998/03/19 00:29:59 millert Exp

Copyright © 1989, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Guido van Rossum.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

gethostname.c: minimal substitute for missing gethostname() function

created 2000-Mar-02 jmk

requires SVR4 uname() and -lc

by Jim Knoble <jmknoble@pobox.com>

Copyright © 2000 Jim Knoble

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

This software is provided "as is," without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including but not limited to the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement. In no event shall the author(s) be liable for any claim, damages or other liability, whether in an action of contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of or in connection with the software or the use or other dealings in the software.

glob.c

Copyright © 1989, 1993

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Guido van Rossum.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR

TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenBSD: strdup.c,v 1.3 1997/08/20 04:18:52 millert Exp

Copyright © 1988, 1993

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenBSD: strlcat.c,v 1.5 2001/01/13 16:17:24 millert Exp

OpenBSD: strlcpy.c,v 1.4 1999/05/01 18:56:41 millert Exp

Copyright © 1998 Todd C. Miller <Todd.Miller@courtesan.com>

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

strmode.c

Copyright © 1990 The Regents of the University of California.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenBSD: strsep.c,v 1.3 1997/08/20 04:28:14 millert Exp

Copyright © 1990, 1993

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

zlib.h — Interface of the "zlib" general-purpose compression library, version 1.1.4, March 11th, 2002

Copyright © 1995-2002 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided "as-is", without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

— Jean-loup Gailly jloup@gzip.org

- Mark Adler madler@alumni.caltech.edu

imapproxy

© Copyright 1993, 1994 by Carnegie Mellon University. All Rights Reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of Carnegie Mellon University not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. Carnegie Mellon University makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, OR OTHER TORTUOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

imap daemon

Program: IMAP4rev1 server

Author: Mark Crispin Networks and Distributed Computing Computing & Communications, Administration Building, AG-44 University of Washington Seattle, WA 98195 Internet: MRC@CAC.Washington.EDU

Date: 5 November 1990 Last Edited: 6 January 1997

Copyright © 1997 by the University of Washington

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of the University of Washington not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. This software is made available "as is", and THE UNIVERSITY OF WASHINGTON DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OF WASHINGTON BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR STRICT LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

imapclient

Author: Mark Crispin Networks and Distributed Computing Computing & Communications, Administration Building, AG-44, University of Washington Seattle, WA 98195 Internet: MRC@CAC.Washington.EDU

Date: 22 November 1989 Last Edited: 9 January 1998

Copyright © 1998 by the University of Washington

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the

name of the University of Washington not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. This software is made available "as is", and THE UNIVERSITY OF WASHINGTON DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OF WASHINGTON BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR STRICT LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

IMAP\imapproxy\amigados.c, IMAP\imapproxy\amigpk.c, and IMAP\imapproxy\amigaunpk.c

© Copyright 1993 by Mike W. Meyer

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of Mike W. Meyer not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. Mike W. Meyer makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

MIKE W. MEYER DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL MIKE W. MEYER BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, OR OTHER TORTUOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS GUIDE

How to Use This Guide 17 Conventions 18 International Terminology 18 Your Comments on the Technical Documentation 19

1 INTRODUCTION

NBX IP Telephony Platforms 21 NBX V3000 21 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 24 NBX 100 27 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis 29 NBX Cards and Devices 32 Analog Line Card 32 T1 Digital Line Card 33 E1 Digital Line Card 36 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 39 10BASE-T Uplink Card 40 Analog Terminal Card 41 Analog Terminal Adapters 42 **3Com Telephones** 44 Legacy Link Devices 45 Third-party Devices and Applications 45 **Optional Software** 46 NBX Licensing 47 Individual Device Limits 48 Licensed Device Limits 48 How the System Limits Interact 48 Table of Maximum Device Counts 49 Device Licenses 52 Group Device Licenses 53

Dynamic License Assignment54Upgrading Device Licenses from R4.X to R5.056Rebooting from R5.X to R4.X57

2 INSTALLING SYSTEM HARDWARE COMPONENTS

Introduction 60 International Feature Support 60 **Power Fail Transfer** 60 Analog Terminal Connectors 60 Language Support 60 Installation Requirements 61 **Electrical Requirements** 61 **Environmental Requirements** 61 Physical Requirements 62 Local Telephone Service 62 Installation Questions 63 Who Should Install the NBX System? 63 Does the Telephone Company Need to Be Involved? 63 Is Any Additional Equipment Required? 63 What External Devices Can Connect to an NBX System? 64 What Effect Does an NBX System Have on a LAN? 64 Before You Begin Installation 66 Required and Recommended Tools and Equipment 66 Important Safety Information 67 Lithium Battery Safety 70 Consignes Importantes de Sécurité 70 Batterie au lithium 72 Wichtige Sicherheitsinformationen 72 Lithiumbatterie 73 Unpacking and Examining the Components 74 Installing the NBX System Hardware 74 Recording MAC Addresses 74 Optionally Upgrading NBX Memory 75 Mounting an NBX 100 Chassis 75 Installing the SuperStack 3 NBX System 78 Mounting the NBX Gateway Chassis 79 Installing a Second Disk for Disk Mirroring 79

Powering Your NBX System 80 Configuring NBX System Networking 80 Establishing IP Connectivity 80 Modifying Default IP Settings 80 Configuring the NBX System IP Address 84 **Establishing LAN Connections** 84 Test Connectivity 85 Connecting Cards and Devices 86 Connecting Analog Line Cards 86 Connecting Digital Line Cards 87 Connecting Analog Terminal Cards 87 Connecting an Analog Terminal Adapter 88 Selecting Regional Software and Components 90 Installing Regional Software and Components 91 Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration 92 Initial System Configuration 93 Disabling the Auto Discover Feature 96 NBX System Operating Modes 96 Reassigning Extensions and Setting Line Card Port Options 97 **Connecting Telephone Lines** 99 Adding External Hardware 99 Connecting a Music-on-Hold (MOH) Input Device 99 Connecting a Paging Amplifier 99 **Configuring Routing Devices** 100

3 TELEPHONES AND ATTENDANT CONSOLES

Adding Telephones 103 Auto Discover Telephones 103 Manually Configure Telephones 106 Connecting Power to the Telephone 107 Connecting the Telephone to the LAN 109 3Com Cordless Telephones 113 3Com Entry Telephones 114 Verifying Telephone Installation 116 Adding a 3Com Attendant Console 116 Connecting Power to the Attendant Console 116 Using a Powered Ethernet Cable to Power an Attendant Console 117 Connecting the Attendant Console to the Network 118 Using Auto Discover for an Attendant Console 119 Associating an Attendant Console with a Specific Telephone 121 Verifying Extension Assignments on an Attendant Console 121 Attendant Console Labels 122 Adding a Remote Telephone 122

4 ANALOG LINES

Auto Discover Analog Line Cards 123 Inserting an Analog Line Card 124 Verifying an Analog Line Card 124 Using the NBX NetSet Utility 124 Using Status Lights 125

5 ANALOG DEVICES

Adding an Analog Terminal Card 128
Inserting an Analog Terminal Card 128
Verifying Analog Terminal Card Ports 130
Using the NBX NetSet Utility 130
Adding an Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 131
Connecting the Analog Terminal Adapter 131
Verifying an Analog Terminal Adapter or the ATA Port 132

6 BRI-ST DIGITAL LINE CARD

Adding a BRI-ST Digital Line Card 136 Preparing the NBX System for BRI Cards 136 Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for BRI 136 Enabling the Auto Discover Feature 137 Inserting the BRI-ST Digital Line Card 137 Verifying a BRI-ST Digital Line Card 138 Using the NBX NetSet Utility 138

7 E1 ISDN PRI DIGITAL LINE CARD

Adding an E1 Digital Line Card 140 Preparing the NBX System for E1 Cards 140 Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for E1 140 Enabling the Auto Discover Feature for Digital Line Cards 141 Inserting the E1 Digital Line Card 141 Verifying an E1 Digital Line Card 142 Using the NBX NetSet Utility 142 Using the Status Lights 143

8 T1 DIGITAL LINE CARD

Adding a T1 Digital Line Card 146 Preparing the NBX System for a T1 Card 146 Ordering DID (Direct Inward Dialing) Services for T1 146 Enabling Auto Discover for Digital Line Cards 147 Inserting the T1 Digital Line Card 147 Verifying the T1 Digital Line Card 148 Using the NBX NetSet Utility 148 Using the Status Lights 149

9 CONFIGURING IP TELEPHONY

IP Telephony Overview 152 Implementing IP 152 Standard IP Configuration 152 IP On-the-Fly Configuration 154 Providing the NCP IP Address to Devices 154 Configuring IP Telephony 155 Selecting the Operating Mode 155 Configuring IP On-the-Fly 156 Configuring the DHCP Server 157 Manually Configuring Telephone IP Settings 157 Automatically Configuring Telephone IP Settings 159 Configuring Analog Line Card Ports 159 Configuring T1, E1, and BRI Channels 160 Low-bandwidth Telephony 161 Broadband Telephony 163

10 TROUBLESHOOTING

System-level Troubleshooting 166

Connecting a Computer to an NCP 169 Servicing the Network Call Processor Battery 170 Getting Service and Support 170

A SPECIFICATIONS

Government Approvals 172 Safety 172 **EMC** Emissions 172 EMC Immunity 172 European Community CE Notice 172 Other Approvals 172 NBX V3000 Call Processor 173 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Call Processor 173 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis 174 NBX 100 Call Processor 174 NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis 175 NBX Analog Line Cards 175 NBX Analog Terminal Cards 177 NBX Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 177 NBX BRI-ST Digital Line Card 178 NBX E1 and T1 Digital Line Cards 178 NBX Hub Card 178 NBX Uplink Card 179 3Com 3102 Business Telephone 179 3Com 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephones 180 3Com 1102 Business Telephone 180 3Com 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephones 181 3Com 2101 Basic Telephone 182 3Com 3105 Attendant Console 182 3Com 1105 Attendant Console 183 3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone 183 3Com 3107C Cordless Telephone 184 3Com 3103 Manager's Telephone 185 3Com 3100 Entry Telephone 185

B CIRCUIT PROVISIONING

Caller ID Choices for Analog Lines 187

T1 Prerequisites188T1 Recommendations188ISDN PRI Prerequisites189CSU Required189ISDN PRI Recommendations189ISDN BRI Prerequisites190ISDN BRI Recommendations191

C GUIDELINES FOR CONNECTING REMOTE AUDIO DEVICES

Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) 193 **Communication Latency Requirements** 194 Large Packet Latency 194 Small Packet Latency 194 Bandwidth Requirements 195 Layer 2 Mulaw (G.711) Audio (Normal Setting) 195 Layer 3 Mulaw (G.711) Audio 195 Layer 2 ADPCM Audio (Reduced Bandwidth Setting) 195 Layer 3 ADPCM Audio (Reduced Bandwidth Setting) 195 Notes on Bandwidth Requirements 195 Installing Fax Machines with ATAs 196

D OBTAINING SUPPORT FOR YOUR 3COM PRODUCTS

Register Your Product to Gain Service Benefits 197 Solve Problems Online 197 Purchase Extended Warranty and Professional Services 198 Access Software Downloads 198 Contact Us 198 Telephone Technical Support and Repair 199 INDEX

FCC CLASS A VERIFICATION STATEMENT

INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

3COM END USER SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT TERMS AND CONDITIONS AND LIMITED WARRANTY

ABOUT THIS GUIDE

This guide provides information and instructions for installing an NBX[®] Networked Telephony Solution. It is intended for authorized installation technicians.



- If the information in the release notes differs from the information in this guide, follow the instructions in the release notes.
- Release notes and all product technical manuals are available on the NBX Resource Pack CD and the 3Com web site.
- For information about monitoring, changing, and maintaining the system, see the NBX Administrator's Guide on the NBX Resource Pack CD or in the NBX NetSet interface.
- For information about using the telephones on an NBX system, see the NBX Telephone Guide and the NBX Feature Codes Guide on the NBX Resource Pack CD or in the NBX NetSet interface.

Table 1 shows where to look for specific information in this guide.

 Table 1
 Overview of the Guide

| Description | Chapter |
|--|-----------|
| An overview of the installation process and hardware components | Chapter 1 |
| How to install hardware components and telephone lines | Chapter 2 |
| How to install Telephones and Attendant Consoles | Chapter 3 |
| How to install Analog Line Cards | Chapter 4 |
| How to install Analog Terminal Cards and Analog Terminal Adapters | Chapter 5 |
| How to install BRI-ST Digital Line Cards | Chapter 6 |
| How to install E1 ISDN PRI Digital Line Cards | Chapter 7 |
| How to install T1 Digital Line Cards | Chapter 8 |
| How to configure IP telephony | Chapter 9 |

How to Use

This Guide

| Table 1 | Overview | of the | Guide | (continued) |
|---------|----------|--------|-------|-------------|
|---------|----------|--------|-------|-------------|

| Description | Chapter |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Troubleshooting information | Chapter 10 |
| System and component specifications | <u>Appendix A</u> |
| ISDN BRI, ISDN PRI, and T1 circuit provisioning information | <u>Appendix B</u> |
| Guidelines for connecting remote audio devices | <u>Appendix C</u> |
| Obtaining Support for Your 3Com Product | <u>Appendix D</u> |
| References to all topics in this book | Index |
| FCC, Industry Canada, Software License Agreement, and Warranty information | the last pages in this book |

Conventions

Table 2 lists conventions that are used throughout this guide.

Table 2Notice Icons

| lcon | Notice Type | Description |
|------|------------------|---|
| i | Information note | Information that describes important features or instructions |
| Ĩ | Caution | Information that alerts you to potential loss of data or potential damage to an application, device, system, or network |
| 4 | Warning | Information that alerts you to potential personal injury |

International Terminology

Table 3 lists the United States and international equivalents of some of the specialized terms used in the NBX documentation.

 Table 3
 International Terminology

| Term used in U.S. | Term used outside the U.S. |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| Toll restrictions | Call barring |
| Pound key (#) | Hash key (#) |
| CO (central office) | Telephone Exchange |
| Toll-free | Free-phone |
| Analog Line Card | Analog Trunk Line Interface Module |

| Your Comments on the Technical Documentation | Your suggestions are important to us. They help us to make the NBX documentation more useful to you. |
|--|---|
| Documentation | Send comments about this guide or any of the 3Com NBX documentation and Help systems to: |
| | Voice_TechComm_Comments@3com.com |
| | Include the following information with your comments: |
| | Document title |
| | Document part number (found on the front page) |
| | Page number |
| | Your name and organization (optional) |
| | Example: |
| | NBX Installation Guide |
| | Part Number 900-0212-01 Rev AA |
| | Page 20 |
| i | As always, address all questions regarding the NBX hardware and software to your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner. |

20 ABOUT THIS GUIDE

INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the NBX[®] system in these topics: NBX IP Telephony Platforms NBX Cards and Devices **Optional Software** NBX Licensing Device Licenses For information about how to prepare your site for installation, see the NBX System Planning Guide on the NBX Resource Pack CD or on the 3Com web site. For information about configuring the Dial Plan and maintaining your NBX system, see the NBX Administrator's Guide in the NBX NetSet™ utility, on the NBX Resource Pack CD, or on the 3Com web site. **NBX IP Telephony** The NBX IP Telephony Solution includes these hardware platforms: **Platforms** The NBX V3000 The SuperStack[®] 3 NBX V5000 The NBX 100 **NBX V3000** The NBX V3000 (Figure 1) houses the Network Call Processor (NCP), which manages call traffic, voice mail, and the Automated Attendant, the system disk drive and power supply, and front panel connections for network and external device connectivity. See "NBX Licensing" on

page 47 for more information on the total number of supported devices.

NBX V3000 Connectors and LEDs

Table 4 describes the front panel connectors and status lights shown in Figure 1.





 Table 4
 NBX V3000 Connectors and LEDs

| 1 | Status Lights | DISK ACT. — Disk activity. Flashing indicates disk activity. |
|---|------------------|---|
| | | PWR/STATUS: |
| | | Blinking green — System is booting. |
| | | Blinking red — System boot has failed. |
| | | Solid green — System is operational. |
| 2 | Ext. Alert | Reserved for future use. |
| 3 | Paging | RJ-11 connector for a 600 Ohm analog paging amplifier. |
| 4 | МОН | Mini-jack (mono or stereo) that accepts Music-On-Hold audio (maximum 2V peak to peak) from the line output of a CD player, tape player, or other music source. |
| 5 | Console | DB-9 connector that provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for access to system CLI commands and status messages. For more information, see <u>"Connecting a Computer to an NCP"</u> on page 169. |
| 6 | Status | Status lights S1 (bottom) and S2 (top) show boot status: |
| | Lights | S2 flashing green — System boot sequence has started. |
| | | S2 green — Disk drive initialization is complete. |
| | | S1 and S2 flash alternately — A file system check (FSCK) is running due to previous improper system shutdown. Do not turn off the system until you have run the system shutdown operation through the NBX NetSet utility (Operations > Reboot/Shutdown). |
| 7 | USB | Reserved for future use. |
| | | |

| 8 | Ethernet | The RJ-45 Ethernet port connects the system to the network. The connection can operate at 10Mbit or 100Mbit. | | | | | |
|----|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | LNK/SPEED: | | | | | |
| | | Yellow — 10Mbit link | | | | | |
| | | Green — 100Mbit link | | | | | |
| | | Off — No link | | | | | |
| | | ACT: | | | | | |
| | | Flashing Green — Activity on port | | | | | |
| | | Off — No activity | | | | | |
| 9 | ATA (FXS) | Analog Terminal Adapter port, RJ-11 FSX (Foreign Exchange Station) connector for connecting an analog device, such as an analog telephone or a fax machine. The LED associated with the port indicates the state of the port: | | | | | |
| | | Initialization: | | | | | |
| | | Fast steady blink — Waiting for software download. | | | | | |
| | | Solid on — Software has been downloaded. The flash memory on the board is being loaded. | | | | | |
| | | Slow, non symmetric blinking pattern — Waiting for completion of the binding process to the NCP. | | | | | |
| | | Operation: | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. | | | | | |
| | | • | | | | | |
| 10 | PFT | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is | | | | | |
| | | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this | | | | | |
| | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. A status light for each FXO port indicates the state of port. | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. A status light for each FXO port indicates the state of port. | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. A status light for each FXO port indicates the state of port. Initialization: Fast steady blink — Waiting for software download. Solid on — Software has been downloaded. The flash memory | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. A status light for each FXO port indicates the state of port. Initialization: Fast steady blink — Waiting for software download. Solid on — Software has been downloaded. The flash memory on the board is being loaded. Slow, non-symmetric blinking pattern — Waiting for the | | | | | |
| 11 | Analog Line Ports (FX0) Status | Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly — Idle, line is not in use. On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly — A telephone call is connected on this port. Power Fail Transfer port. RJ-11 connector accepts a standard POTS (2500-series compatible) telephone. During a power failure, this port continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Four RJ-11 Foreign Exchange Office (FXO) ports for connecting central office telephone lines. A status light for each FXO port indicates the state of port. Initialization: Fast steady blink — Waiting for software download. Solid on — Software has been downloaded. The flash memory on the board is being loaded. Slow, non-symmetric blinking pattern — Waiting for the completion of the binding process to the NCP. | | | | | |

 Table 4
 NBX V3000 Connectors and LEDs (continued)

 Table 4
 NBX V3000 Connectors and LEDs (continued)

| 13 | Front Label | Shows the system ID number, which you must use when ordering licensed features. A label on the back of the NBX V3000 shows the system ID, the system serial number, and the analog port |
|----|-------------|---|
| | | MAC address. |

SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 (Figure 2) houses the Network Call Processor (NCP), which manages call traffic, voice mail, and the Automated Attendant; the system disk drive and power supply; and front panel connections for network and external device connectivity. The SuperStack 3 NBX is also available with redundant power supplies. You can also add a second "mirrored" disk drive. Disk mirroring is described in the NBX Administrator's Guide in the NBX NetSet[™] utility, on the NBX Resource Pack CD, and on the 3Com web site. See <u>"NBX Licensing"</u> on page 47 for more information on the total number of supported devices.

SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Connectors and LEDs

Figure 2 shows the front panel of the SuperStack 3 NBX and Table 5 describes each front panel connector and status light.



Figure 2 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000

 Table 5
 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Connectors and LEDs

| 1 | KYBD | Reserved for future use. |
|---|-------|--------------------------|
| 2 | Mouse | Reserved for future use. |
| 3 | Video | Reserved for future use. |

| 4 | Disk Drive | Shipped with the primary drive installed on the left. | |
|----|------------------------|--|--|
| | Tray | | |
| 5 | USB | Reserved for future use. | |
| 6 | COM1 | DB-9 connector that provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for access to system CLI commands and status messages. For information on how to connect to the NBX system using the Console connector, see <u>"Connecting a Computer to an NCP"</u> on page 169. | |
| 7 | COM2 | Reserved for future use. | |
| 8 | Ethernet 1 | RJ-45 connector to connect the SuperStack 3 NBX to the network. This port can operate at 10 Mbps and 100 Mbps; it automatically senses the speed of your LAN. | |
| 9 | Network Status LEDs | Three LEDs for each of the 2 Ethernet ports indicate port status: | |
| | | LNK — Solid on indicates link; Off indicates no link. | |
| | | 10 — Blinking indicates network activity at 10 MB; Solid on indicates heavy network activity. | |
| | | 100 — Blinking indicates network activity at 10 MB; Solid on indicates heavy network activity. | |
| 10 | Ethernet 2 | A fail-over port that is active only if the Ethernet 1 port experiences a link failure. This port can operate at 10 Mbps and 100 Mbps; it automatically senses the speed of your LAN. | |
| 11 | VOL | This adjusting screw controls the volume of Music-On-Hold. | |
| 12 | МОН | Mini-jack (mono or stereo) that accepts Music-On-Hold audio (maximum 2V peak to peak) from the line output of a CD player, tape player, or other music source. | |
| 13 | Paging | This RJ-11 connector provides an audio output or a dry contact switch connection for use with a public address system. | |
| 14 | Ext. Alert | Reserved for future use. | |
| 15 | System Status LEDs | S1, S2, S3 and PWR provide a visual indication of system status. See <u>Table 6</u> , next. | |

 Table 5
 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Connectors and LEDs (continued)

Table 6 SuperStack 3 NBX System Status LEDs

| Explanation | S1 | S2 | S 3 | PWR |
|---|----------|-----|------------|-----|
| Attempting to boot from disk 0 (zero) | Off | On | Off | On |
| Attempting to boot from disk 1 | Off | Off | On | On |
| Boot process completed, system initializing | Flashing | N/A | N/A | On |
| System is running | On | N/A | N/A | On |

| Explanation | | S2 | S3 | PWR |
|--|-----|----------|----------|-----|
| Flash codes for disk problems: | | Flashing | Flashing | On |
| • 2 flashes: No valid disk (system is halted). | | | | |
| • 3 flashes : Two valid disks, but they are not paired (system is halted). | | | | |
| • 4 flashes : Configuration problem (system is halted). | | | | |
| 5 flashes: Two disks present, but no mirroring license installed. System is running but the system is not using the second disk. | | | | |
| Using disk 0 (zero) only | N/A | On | Off | On |
| Using disk 1 only | N/A | Off | On | On |
| Synchronizing — disk 0 is valid, disk 1 is becoming a fully mirrored disk. LED 3 flash rate indicates progress. | N/A | On | Flashing | On |
| If LED 3 stops normal flashing and intermittently flashes twice, the mirroring process has failed. | | | | |
| Synchronizing — disk 1 is valid, disk 0 is becoming a fully mirrored disk. LED 2 flash rate indicates progress. | N/A | Flashing | On | On |
| If LED 2 stops normal flashing and intermittently flashes twice, the mirroring process has failed. | | | | |
| LED 2 and LED 3 flash alternately: the two disks are resynchronizing | N/A | Flashing | Flashing | On |
| Synchronized | N/A | On | On | On |

NBX 100 The NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis (Figure 3) houses the Network Call Processor (NCP), which manages call traffic, voice mail, and the Automated Attendant, and the system disk drive, and the power supply. An NBX 100 system can have one or more chassis, but only one NCP. The number depends on how many external telephone lines the system must support, the equipment that you choose for attaching telephones, and the type of network connections you want. The top slot has no access to the backplane. Always cover the top slot with a blank faceplate.

See <u>"NBX Licensing</u>" on page 47 for more information on the total number of supported devices.



Figure 3 NBX 100 Chassis with Network Call Processor and Cards

The NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis can be used as an expansion chassis for an NBX system. You must install an NBX Uplink Card or Hub Card to connect the chassis to the network. The top slot of an NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis has no access to the backplane. If you are using an NBX 100 6-Slot chassis as an expansion chassis, always cover the top slot with a blank faceplate.

NBX 100 Network Call Processor Connectors and LEDs

The NBX 100 NCP has two models. The current model, 3C1011D, does not include a BNC connector. Figure 4 shows the two models of the NBX 100 NCP and Table 7 describes each front panel connector and status light.

Figure 4 NBX 100 Call Processor 3C10110D (top) and 3C10110C (bottom)



| 4 | Paging | This RJ-11 connector provides an audio output or a dry contact switch connection for use with a public address system. |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Ext. Alert | Reserved for future use. |
| 6 | BNC 10B2 (3C1011Conly) and LINK LED | BNC connector to connect to an external Ethernet switch or hub. |
| | | The older 3C10110C Network Call Processor (no longer available) includes a BNC connector and an RJ-45 connector for uplink connections. The BNC and RJ-45 connectors are alternative connections for a single port. They cannot be used simultaneously. |
| | | If you use the 10BT Uplink connector, be sure to program the switch or router on the other end for 10 MB operation. |
| 7 | 10BT Uplink and LINK LED | RJ-45 connector provides means to connect to an external Ethernet switch or hub. Be sure to program the switch or router on the other end for 10 MB operation. |
| 8 | COM1 | DB-9 connector that provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for access to system CLI commands and status messages. For information on how to connect to the NCP using the Console connector, see <u>"Connecting a Computer to an NCP"</u> on page 169. |
| 9 | COM2 | Reserved for future use. |

 Table 7
 NBX 100 NCP Connectors and LEDs (continued)

SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis

The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis Figure 5, contains four card slots so that you can connect optional interface cards to your system. As shipped from the factory, the top three have faceplates and the fourth is left open. For installation instructions, see Chapter 2.

The 3C10200B is an updated version of the 3C10200, which is no longer available. The update removed one port (**3** in Figure 5) and improved the switchover performance of the Ethernet ports so that both ports have connectivity prior to switchover.



Figure 5 SuperStack 3 NBX Chassis 3C10200 (top) and 3C10200B (bottom)

 Table 8
 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis Connectors

| 1 | 4-slot chassis | Removable faceplates installed. |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | 10/100 Mbps switched Ethernet connection | Two redundant uplink ports. Use the upper port to connect to the LAN. The lower port is normally inactive and becomes active only if the upper port experiences a link failure. On the 3C10200B, both ports show a positive link status even though only one port at a time is active. |
| 3 | 10 Mbps shared Ethernet connection | One port (3C10200 only) |
| | | |



İ

Gateway Chassis Redundant Power Supply

You can attach a redundant power supply to the RPS connector on the back of the NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis. <u>Table 9</u> describes the items that you must purchase, assemble, and connect to the chassis. See your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner for purchasing details.



CAUTION: If you are using the 3Com SuperStack Advanced Redundant Power System (ARPS) as a backup power supply for the NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis, you can have no more than 2 Analog Terminal Cards of Models 3C10117, 3C10117A, or 3C10117B-INT per chassis. This restriction does not apply to the 3C10117C Analog Terminal Card.

 Table 9
 SuperStack 3 NBX Redundant Power Supply Components

| Order Number | Description | Quantity |
|--------------|--|----------|
| 3C16071B | SuperStack ARPS Chassis | 1 |
| 3C16074A | Type 2A, 100W Power Module (NLP100-9640) | 2 |
| 3C16078 | Type 2 "Y" Cable | 1 |

To connect the redundant power supply to the NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis:

- **1** Assemble the redundant power supply according to the instructions in the SuperStack ARPS documentation.
- **2** Attach the "Y" cable to the RPS connector on the back of the SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis.
- **3** Connect the SuperStack ARPS chassis to a source of AC power.

NBX Cards andThis section lists NBX cards available from 3Com that can you can use**Devices**with an NBX system.



Before you install any Analog Line Cards or Digital Line Cards, you may want to configure the Dial Prefix settings. For information on this topic, see "Dial Prefix Settings" in Chapter 2 in the NBX Administrator's Guide or the NBX NetSet Help at Dial Plan > Operations > Dial Prefix Settings.

Analog Line Card The NBX Analog Line Card connects up to four analog telephone lines from the Central Office (CO) to the NBX system.

Figure 6 NBX Analog Line Card (3C10114)



Figure 7 NBX Analog Line Card (3C10114C)



Functionally, 3C10114 and 3C10114C are identical. However, 3C10114C uses different internal components so that 3C10114C requires NBX software release R4.1 or higher. Each Analog Line Card contains the following lights and connectors:

Status Lights (1 through 4) — Each light shows the status of the associated line.

Initialization (prior to Release R4.1):

- All four lights flash in unison Hardware is initializing.
- A light flashes on twice, off for 2 seconds Associated port has been initialized successfully.

Initialization (Release R4.1 and higher):

- Fast steady blink Waiting for software download.
- Solid on Software has been downloaded. The flash memory on the board is being loaded.

 Slow, non symmetric blinking pattern — Waiting for the completion of the binding process to the NCP.

Operation:

- Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly Idle, the line is not in use.
- On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly A telephone call is connected on this port.
- Console Connector This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.
- **T1 Digital Line Card** The optionalT1 Digital Line Card lets you connect a T1 line to the NBX system. When configured as standard T1 (DS1), the T1 card supports in-band signaling of 24 DS0 (64 Kbps) "voice" channels and a variety of signaling types and protocols. The T1 carries data at a rate of 1.544 Mbps. When configured as ISDN PRI, the T1 card supports 23 voice channels with PRI services such as Direct Inward Dialing (DID).

You must have an external Channel Service Unit (CSU) when you use the 3C10116C T1 Digital Line Card. 3C10116D includes an onboard CSU. The 3C10116D can provide CSU performance statistics, supports loopback testing, and can be configured as a remote device that communicates with its NCP over a routed network.



ISDN PRI services require specific circuit provisioning, which you must obtain before you can use the T1 card in PRI mode. See <u>Appendix B</u> for more information.

Figure 8 T1 Digital Line Card (3C10116C)







The 3C10116C T1 Digital Line Card has these lights and connectors:

- **T1** This RJ-48C connector makes a patch cord connection to a T1 interface (CSU/DSU).
- **Status Lights** These lights indicate the status of the card's signaling, synchronization, and loop back test.
 - **CF** On indicates a Carrier Failure. The T1 card is not receiving carrier signals from the far end of the T1 line.
 - **RA** On indicates a Remote Alarm. The far (remote) end of the T1 line is not receiving appropriate signaling from the T1 board.
 - LB On indicates that loop-back testing is in progress.
 - **Nominal** On indicates ready to send and receive information.
- 10BASE-T Uplink This RJ-45 Ethernet connector connects the T1 card to an external LAN hub or switch. You can use this connector to isolate T1 traffic. If the T1 Digital Line Card is used in an SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis, do not use this connector because the chassis has an Ethernet connector to connect the chassis to the LAN.



If you use the Uplink connector, be sure to program the switch or router on the other end for 10BASE-T 10 MB operation.

 Console — This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.

The 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Card has the following lights and connectors:

- T1 This RJ-48C connector makes a patch cord connection to a T1 interface.
- Status Lights These lights indicate the status of the T1 card's signaling, synchronization, and loop back test.
 - **CO** Central Office:

Amber — Alarm condition at the remote end or the CO is not connected or available.

Green — No alarm condition.

POST — Power On Self Test

Off — POST test is running. The test runs approximately 5 seconds after you apply power to the board. After 5 seconds, Off indicates the POST test failed.

Green — POST test completed successfully.

DCH — D channel status of an ISDN PRI connection

Off — No T1 or T1 PRI line is attached or the card does not need a D channel, such as when the card is running T1-robbed-bit.

Green — Card is configured for ISDN PRI operation and an active PRI connection has been established.

Amber — The D channel has not yet been established. It can take several seconds after the card has completed its power up tests for the card to establish a connection with the PRI trunk. If the DCH light goes to amber after the connection has been established, it can mean that an active control channel connection through the PRI line has been lost.

DNLD — Download

Flash — The card is downloading software from the NBX Network Call Processor.

Green — The download is complete or the Power-On-Self-Test (POST) is running.

Amber — The download was interrupted before it was completed.

On a LAN, the download process runs quickly. If the download from NCP to digital line card must travel a routed network path, the download can take a few minutes. If the DNLD light remains amber, it can indicate a severely congested network or a hardware problem with the T1 card.

• **CALL** — Call audio traffic

Off — No audio traffic on the T1 link.

Flashing — Audio traffic is present.

• **CARD** — Card Software Status

Green — The card has finished downloading software from the NCP and all software processes have started successfully.

Amber — A problem with one or more of the software processes running on the card. The card automatically reboots itself if it detects a problem with any of its software processes.

- **DSP** Reserved for future use
- NCP Network Call Processor

Amber — The card is trying to establish contact with an NCP.

Green — The card has established contact with an NCP.

• LNK — Ethernet link.

Green — The 10/100 Uplink port is connected to a 10Mb or to a 10/100 Mb hub or switch.

Red — The 10/100 Uplink port is connected to a 100 Mb hub or switch.

Off — There is no connection to the 10/100 Uplink port.

• ACT— Ethernet activity.

Rapid blink — Data is passing into or out of the T1 card through the 10/100 Uplink port.

- 10/100 Uplink This RJ-45 Ethernet connector connects the T1 card to an external LAN hub or switch. You can use this connector to isolate T1 traffic. If the T1 Digital Line Card is used in a SuperStack 3 NBX Gateway Chassis, do not use this connector because the chassis has an Ethernet connector to connect the chassis to the LAN.
- Console This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.



CAUTION: This equipment does not operate when the main power fails.

E1 Digital Line Card

The E1 Digital Line Card, used outside of North America, provides E1 connectivity using the ISDN PRI protocol. It carries data at a rate of 2.048 Mbps and can carry 32 channels, each with 64 Kbps. Thirty of these channels are available for calls. Like the T1 ISDN PRI Card, the E1 PRI Card supports PRI software features such as DID.

3C10165D includes an onboard CSU. The 3C10165D can provide CSU performance statistics, can be enabled for loopback testing, and can be configured as a remote device that communicates with its NCP over a routed network.



ISDN PRI services require specific circuit provisioning, which you must obtain before using this card. See <u>Appendix B</u> for more information.
Figure 10 E1 Digital Line Card (3C10165C)



Figure 11 E1 Digital Line Card (3C10165D)



Each 3C10165C E1 card has the following lights and connectors:

- E1 This RJ-48C connector makes a connection to an ISDN interface channel service unit/data service unit (CSU/DSU).
- Status Lights These lights indicate the status of the card's signaling, synchronization, and loop back test.
 - CF On indicates a Carrier Failure. The card is not receiving carrier signals from the far end of the E1 line.
 - RA On indicates a Remote Alarm. The far end of the E1 line is not receiving appropriate signaling from the E1 board.
 - LB On indicates that loop-back testing is going on.
 - **Nominal** On indicates ready to send and receive information.
- 10BASE-T Uplink MDI This RJ-45 Ethernet connector connects the card to an external LAN hub or switch. If the E1 Digital Line Card is used in a SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis, do not use this connector because the chassis has an Ethernet connector to connect the chassis to the LAN.



If you use the Uplink connection, be sure to program the switch or router at the other end for 10BASE-T 10 MB operation.

 Console — This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.

Each 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Card has the following lights and connectors:

E1 — This RJ-48C connector makes a patch cord connection to a E1 interface.

- Status Lights These lights indicate the status of the card's signaling, synchronization, and loop back test.
 - **CO** Central Office:

Amber — Alarm condition at the remote end or the CO is not connected or available.

Green — No alarm condition.

• **POST** — Power On Self Test:

Off — POST test is running. The test runs approximately 5 seconds after you apply power to the board. After 5 seconds, Off indicates that the POST test failed.

Green — POST test completed successfully.

• DCH — D channel status of an ISDN PRI connection

Off — No E1 or E1 PRI line is attached.

Green — Card is configured for ISDN PRI operation and an active PRI connection has been established.

Amber — The D channel has not yet been established. It can take several seconds after the card has completed its power up tests for the card to establish a connection with the PRI trunk. If the DCH light goes to amber after the connection has been established, it can mean that an active control channel connection through the PRI line has been lost.

DNLD — Download

Flash — The card is downloading software from the NCP.

Green — The download is complete or the Power-On-Self-Test (POST) is running.

Amber — The download was interrupted before it was completed.

On a LAN, the download process is completed quickly. If the download from NCP to digital line card must travel a routed network path, the download may take a few minutes. If the DNLD light remains amber, it can indicate a severely congested network or a hardware problem with the card.

• **CALL** — Call audio traffic

Off — No audio traffic on the T1 link.

Flashing — Audio traffic is present.

• **CARD** — Card Software Status

Green — The card has finished downloading software from the NCP and all software processes have started successfully.

Amber — A problem with one or more of the software processes running on the card. The card automatically reboots itself if it detects a problem with any of its software processes.

- **DSP** Reserved for future use
- NCP Network Call Processor communications status

Amber — The card is trying to establish contact with an NCP.

Green — The card has established contact with an NCP.

• LNK — Ethernet link status

Green — The 10/100 Uplink port is connected to a 10Mb or to a 10/100 Mb hub or switch.

Red — The 10/100 Uplink port is connected to a 100 Mb hub or switch.

Off — There is no connection to the 10/100 Uplink port.

• ACT— Ethernet activity

Rapid blink — Data is passing into or out of the card through the 10/100 Uplink port.

- 10/100 Uplink This RJ-45 Ethernet connector connects the E1 card to an external LAN hub or switch. You can use this connector to isolate E1 traffic. If the E1 Digital Line Card is used in a SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis, do not use this connector because the chassis has an Ethernet connector to connect the chassis to the LAN.
- **Console** This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.



If you require an alternative (bare wire-end) cable to use with the ISDN PRI Digital Line Card, contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner.



CAUTION: This equipment does not operate when the main power fails.

BRI-ST Digital Line Card

The ISDN BRI-ST (Basic Rate Interface) Digital Line Card (Figure 12) has four separate ports, each of which accommodates two B channels and one D channel. Each B channel carries user data at 64 Kbps and the D channel operates at 16 Kbps. If the two B channels are bonded, the transmission rate is 128 Kbps.

Figure 12 BRI-ST Digital Line Card (3C10164C)





CAUTION: The BRI-ST Digital Line Cards are not approved for use in the United States or Canada.

- Status Lights Each port has three status lights:
 - **D** On when this signaling channel is active.
 - **B1** On when this data channel is active (a call is in progress).
 - **B2** On when this data channel is active (a call is in progress).

During the Auto Discover process:

Each status light turns amber briefly, starting with span 1 (channels D, B1, and B2) and continuing through span 4 (channels D, B1, and B2). After approximately 30 seconds, the B1 status light on all four spans turns green for approximately 1 minute. All lights turn off when the Auto Discover process is complete.

After you connect an ISDN BRI span to a port:

- The D light turns green if the span is operating properly and turns amber if there is a problem. For a span that is operating properly, when the NBX system initiates or receives a call on a B channel, the corresponding light initially turns amber. When the call is answered, the light turns green.
- Console This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.



CAUTION: This equipment does not operate when the main power fails.

10BASE-T Uplink Card

The 10BASE-T Uplink Card provides eight 10BASE-T Ethernet ports to connect 3Com Telephones (or other 10BASE-T devices) to the LAN. The Uplink Card (3C10370) replaces the 10BASE-T Hub Card (3C10115).

Figure 13 NBX Uplink Card (3C10370)



The NBX 10BASE-T Uplink Card contains these lights and connectors:

- Status Lights (PWR and 1 through 8) These lights indicate the status of power to the hub and the status of the 10BASE-T ports.
- Ethernet Hub Ports (8) These RJ-45 MDI-X ports connect devices to the LAN.
- Analog Terminal Card Each Analog Terminal Card allows connections for up to four analog (2500-series compliant) telephones and Group-3 fax machines. When an Analog Terminal Card senses that a port is being used for fax transmission, it switches that port to *reliable* mode. Unlike voice transfers, which drop packets due to congestion, reliable mode transmissions take as much time as needed to ensure that there are no lost packets. However, reliable mode also uses twice the bandwidth.



CAUTION: If you are using the 3Com SuperStack ARPS (Advanced Redundant Power Source) as a backup power supply for the SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Gateway Chassis, you can have no more than 2 Analog Terminal Cards of Models 3C10117, 3C10117A, or 3C10117B-INT per Gateway Chassis. This restriction does not apply to the 3C10117C Analog Terminal Card.

Figure 14 NBX Analog Terminal Card (3C10117B-INT)







Each Analog Terminal Card has the following lights and connectors:

- Analog Connectors (1 through 4) Four RJ11connectors enable you to connect analog devices to the NBX system.
- Status Lights (1 through 4) Each light indicates the status of the associated port.

Initialization:

- Fast steady blink Waiting for software download.
- **Solid on** Software has been downloaded. The flash memory on the board is being loaded.
- Slow, non-symmetric blinking pattern Waiting for the completion of the binding process to the NCP.

Operation:

- Off for 9 to 10 seconds, on briefly Idle, telephone is on hook.
- On for 9 to 10 seconds, off briefly Idle, telephone is off hook.
- Console Connector This DB-9 connector provides an RS-232 (DCE) TTY terminal connection for maintenance access.

Analog Terminal
AdaptersThe single-port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) is a desktop box that
connects a single analog telephone or fax machine to an NBX system.

Figure 16 Analog Terminal Adapter (3C10400) — Front View



Figure 17 Analog Terminal Adapter (3C10400) — Rear View



The 3C10400 ATA can accept power over the Ethernet cable. It meets the IEEE 802.3af standard for Power over Ethernet. It can also accept power from an AC power adapter plugged into a wall socket. The 3C10400 is a Class 3 PoE device.

The 3C10400 ATA has an RS232 DB9 connector that allows a technician to access a command line interface for the device.



Only qualified 3Com service personnel should use the serial diagnostic port.

The Analog Terminal Adapter (3C10400) has these lights and connectors:

- Power Light The light below the icon for power indicates that the ATA is receiving power.
- POTS Status Lights (S1, S2, S3) The POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service) status lights indicate the status of the Analog Port. S3 is on when the analog device is in use. S2 blinks briefly every 10 seconds when an analog device is connected to the ATA. If no analog telephone is connected, S2 is always off. S1 is reserved for future use.
- PC Link Light On indicates that there is an external network device connected to the ATA.
- LAN Link Light On indicates that the ATA is connected to the network.
- **10101** Serial port for diagnostics.
- **POTS** A connection for an analog telephone or fax machine.
- **PC** A connection for a network device.
- **LAN** A connection to the network.

3Com Telephones 3Com Telephones provide the familiar features of a business telephone and extra features such as one-touch access to voice mail.



3103 Manager's Telephone 3C01403A

Requires NBX R5.0 or higher and a Group 2license

For more information on device licenses, see<u>"Group</u> <u>Device Licenses</u>" on page 53.



3102 Business Telephone 3C10402A Requires NBX R4.3 or higher and a Group 2 license



3101SP Basic Telephone (with speakerphone, shown, 3C10401SPKRA)

3101 Basic Telephone (without speakerphone, 3C10401A)

Requires NBX R4.3 or higher and a Group 1 or higher license



3107C Cordless Telephone (left) 3C10407A

3106C Cordless Telephone 3C10406A

Requires NBX R5.0 or higher and a Group 1 or higher license



3100 Entry Telephone 3C10399A

- The 3100 Entry Telephone does not include a switch port.
- The 3100 Entry Telephone does not support external TAPI applications.

Requires NBX R5.0 or higher and a Group 0 or higher license



3105 Attendant Console 3C10405A

The 3Com Attendant Console provides attendant (receptionist) access and monitoring for up to 100 extensions.

Requires NBX R4.3 or higher and a Group 2 license

NBX systems also support legacy 3Com telephones: 2101 Basic Telephones, 1102, 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephones, and 1105 Attendant Consoles.



CAUTION: To avoid damage to the 3Com telephone, do not connect a 3Com telephone or Attendant Console directly to a standard telephone line. Although the RJ-11 connector for a traditional telephone fits into the 3Com telephone's RJ-45 jack, the electrical interfaces are not compatible and the telephone will not work.

Legacy Link Devices 3Com Legacy Link Blades allow you to migrate Nortel Norstar and Meridian telephone users to an IP infrastructure. The 3Com Legacy Link Analog Blade is a multiport analog handset gateway card that fits into an NBX chassis.



Legacy Link cards put significant traffic on an NBX 100 backplane. 3Com recommends that you install no more than two Legacy Link cards in an NBX 100 chassis. If you have Digital Line Cards (T1/E1) in the same chassis, you must connect the Digital Line Cards to an Ethernet switch via the uplink port on the front of the cards to reduce backplane traffic. These limitations do not apply to the SuperStack3 NBX V5000 Chassis.

Third-party Devices
and Applications3Com works with third-party suppliers to provide a range of devices and
software applications that are compatible with NBX systems. For more
information on third-party offerings, see your 3Com NBX
Voice-Authorized Partner.

| Optional Software | The NBX Resource Pack CD |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|--------------------------|--------------------------|

The NBX Resource Pack CD includes a number of optional components. Two applications are counterparts of two NBX system hardware devices:

- NBX Complement Attendant Software (CAS) runs on a PC and provides the functions of an Attendant Console. You install the Complement Attendant Software from the NBX Resource pack CD. You must purchase a license and use the NBX NetSet utility to install it before you can use CAS.
- pcXsetTM Soft Telephone runs on a PC and provides most of the features of a 3Com Business Telephone. The NBX system comes with one pcXset license. To use more than one pcXset client with an NBX system, you must purchase additional licenses and use the NBX NetSet utility to install them. You add a pcXset client as a telephone in the NBX NetSet utility and specify the host PC's NIC MAC address as the device identifier.

In addition, these software applications and documents are available on the *NBX Resource Pack CD*:

- NBX Call Reports enables you to retrieve the call detail records that are kept on the NBX system, present them in report format and export them in a format suitable for other reporting applications. No license required. NBX Call Reports is available from the NBX Resource Pack CD and from within the Downloads tab of the NBX NetSet utility.
- NBX TAPI Service Provider (NBXTSP) provides the interface between the NBX system and the Microsoft Telephone API to enable software applications to use NBX Telephone services and features.
- Desktop Call Assistant is a TAPI-based program that allows you to dial calls from your computer screen.
- Palm Dialer enables you to look up a telephone number in your Palm Address Book application and then place a call to that number on an NBX 2102-IR Business Telephone (a legacy device) through the phone's infrared port.
- NBX ConneXtions allows you to use an appropriately configured Windows system as an H.323 gateway for use with NBX systems.
- NBX Media Driver works with the NBXTSP to provide external software applications access to the features of the NBX system.
- 3Com Network Supervisor is an evaluation version of the 3Com network element management system.

- NBX LabelMaker is available through the NBX NetSet utility. It enables you to define custom telephone button labels. You can create, print, and save the labels for later use.
- 3Com Telephone Local Configuration Application is a PC-based utility that enables you to manually configure the basic settings for NBX devices that do not have an LCD display, such as the 3100 Entry Telephone and the 3105 Attendant Console.

NBX Licensing

Each NBX system is shipped with a total-device-limit license that controls the total number of devices that you can configure on the system. However, there are other factors to consider when determining what your system can support. Your configuration must conform to **all** of these limits:

- The limit imposed by the total system license (explained next)
- The individual limits on certain device types (explained later in this topic)
- The license requirements for some hardware and software

What Counts Toward the Total Device Limit?

NBX systems count many physical devices and certain software applications as devices toward the total device limit:

- Physical Devices Each 3Com Telephone, each Analog Terminal Adapter, each channel on a Digital Line Card, and each port on an Analog Line Card counts as one device. Physical device limits are listed in <u>Table 10</u>.
- Software "Devices" Each NBX Media Driver port counts as one device. Each installation (client) of the pcXset Soft Telephone application counts as one device.

What Does NOT Count Toward the Total Device Limit?

The NBX systems do not count most applications toward the total device limit, although some may be governed by license limits. Examples: voice mail ports, automated attendant ports, Call Park zones, System Speed Dials, and any other item with "None" in the second column in <u>Table 10</u>.

Individual Device Limits Certain individual device types are limited to a maximum per system because of internal product rules. For example, the NBX Analog Line Card has 4 ports. Although each of these ports counts as a device, the NBX system architecture limits the system to 180 Analog Line Cards (4 x 180), and thus the system can support a maximum of 720 not 1500 analog line ports.

Licensed Device Certain devices and applications have limits that are governed by licenses. Device licensing is explained in detail in <u>"Device Licenses"</u> on page 52. Your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner can provide details on available incremental device licences.

How the SystemAs you add devices to an NBX system, you must keep in mind all of theseLimits Interactlimitations:

- Total device limit for the system
- Individual device limit for certain device types
- License limit for certain device types
- System memory

Example: Your NBX V3000 has the memory upgrade installed, it is licensed for 1500 total devices and you want to configure 450 telephones:

 You configure 6 NBX Analog Line Cards, and 12 NBX Analog Terminal Cards (for analog telephones and FAX machines).

The total device count is now $(6 \times 4) + (12 \times 4) = 72$.

• You then configure 450 3Com Telephones.

The total device count is now 522. You can configure 978 additional devices (1500–522).

 You want to configure 200 Attendant Consoles, but, because the individual device limit for Attendant Consoles is 100, you can configure only 100 Attendant Consoles.

The total device count is now 622. You can configure 878 additional devices (1500–622).

• You want to add Virtual Tie Lines (VTLs), but you can add only 48 because that is the maximum license level available for VTLs.

VTLs do not count toward the device limit, so the total device count remains at 622. So, after you add 48 VTLs, you can still configure up to 878 additional devices.

Table of Maximum Device Counts

<u>Table 10</u> lists each NBX device and application, with information on whether it counts toward the total device count and the maximum number allowed per NBX system.

For the current device and license configuration on your system, see **NBX NetSet > Operations > Licenses** as well as the **Usage Report** accessible from the Licenses screen.



Some of the limits in Table 10 can be affected by your dial plan. The 3-digit dial plan does not support enough extensions to allow you to reach all the device limits.

| Table 10 | Detailed | Device | Limits |
|----------|----------|--------|--------|
| | | | |

| Device/application Description | Per-Unit Device Count Toward Total System Count | NBX V3000: Max with Memory Upgrade | NBX V3000: Max without Memory Upgrade | SuperStack 3 System Maximum | NBX 100 System Maximum | Device or Site License Required? |
|--|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 1102, 2102, or 2102-IR Business Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | No |
| 2101 Basic Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | No |
| 1105 Attendant Console | 1 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 50 | No |
| 3106C Cordless Telephone | 1 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | Yes |
| 3107C Cordless Telephone | 1 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | Yes |
| The limits on cordless information, see <u>"Co</u> | | | | er than system ca | pacity limits. F | or more |
| 3103 Manager's Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| 3102 Business Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| 3101 or 3101SP Basic Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| 3100 Entry Telephone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |

Table 10 Detailed Device Limits (continued)

| Device/application Description | Per-Unit Device Count Toward Total System Count | NBX V3000: Max with Memory Upgrade | NBX V3000: Max without Memory Upgrade | SuperStack 3 System Maximum | NBX 100 System Maximum | Device or Site License Required? |
|---|---|---|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 3105 Attendant Console | 1 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 50 | Yes |
| pcXset Soft Telephone | 1 per pcXset PC telephone client | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| NBX Media Driver (for WAV devices) | 1 driver/system enables the max allowable number of WAV devices | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| Polycom IP 3000 Speaker Phone | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes |
| Legacy Link Handset Gateway card | 16 (16-port card) | 1488 (93 cards) | 240 (15 cards) | 1488 (93 cards) | 192 (12 cards) | Yes |
| NBX Analog Terminal Card (ATC) | 4 4-port card) | 1500 (375 cards) | 248 (62 cards) | 1500 (375 cards) | 248 (62 cards) | No |
| NBX Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) | 1 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | No |
| NBX Analog Line Card | 4 per card | 720 ports (180 cards) | 248 ports (62 cards) | 720 ports (180 cards) | 100 ports (25 cards) | No |
| NBX T1 Card (DS1) | 24 per card | 720 channels (30 cards) | 240 channels (10 cards) | 720 channels (30 cards) | 72 channels (3 cards) | No |
| NBX T1 Card (ISDN PRI) | 23 per card | 713 channels (31 cards) | 230 channels (10 cards) | 713 channels (31 cards) | 69 channels (3 cards) | No |
| NBX E1 Card (ISDN PRI) | 30 per card | 720 channels (24 cards) | 240 channels (8 cards) | 720 channels (24 cards) | 90 channels (3 cards) | No |
| NBX ISDN BRI-ST card | 8 per card | 720 channels (90 cards) | 248 channels (31 cards) | 720 channels (90 cards) | 96 channels (12 cards) | No |
| System Architectur | e Attributes | | | | | |
| Virtual Tie Lines | None | 48 | 8 | 48 | 8 | Yes |
| ConneXtions (H323) ports | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 16 | Yes |
| Bridged Extensions | None | 400 Primary 1200 Bridged | 400 Primary 1200 Bridged | 400 Primary 1200 Bridged | 100 Primary 300 Bridged | No |
| Application and Ca | ll Processing At | tributes | | | | |
| Auto Attendants | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | No |

Table 10 Detailed Device Limits (continued)

| Device/application Description | Per-Unit Device Count Toward Total System Count | NBX V3000: Max with Memory Upgrade | NBX V3000: Max without Memory Upgrade | SuperStack 3 System Maximum | NBX 100 System Maximum | Device or Site License Required? |
|---|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| The 3-digit dial plan | might not provid | e enough extensi | ions to support 10 | 00 Auto Attendar | nts. | |
| Voice Mail Ports | None | 72 | 12 | 72 | 12 | Yes (above 4 ports) |
| Voice Mailboxes | None | 1500 | 250 | 1500 | 200 | Yes (covered by total system device license) |
| Automatic Call Distribution Groups | 0 | 100 | 48 | 100 | 48 | Yes (above 2 agents/group) |
| ACD Groups, Hunt G you have 50 Hunt Gr | | | | | | |
| Phantom Mailboxes | None | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 150 | No |
| The 3-digit dial plan | does not provide | enough extensio | ons to support 10 | 00 Phantom Mail | boxes. | |
| Call Park Zones | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 9 with the 3-digit dial plan; 100 with the 4-digit plan. | No |
| The 3-digit dial plan | might not provid | e enough extensi | ions to support 10 | 00 zones. | | |
| Call Pickup | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 32 | No |
| Conference Calls | None | 12 | 12 | 12 | 4 | No |

| 1 | | | | | | |
|------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|----|----|
| Conference Calls | None | 12 | 12 | 12 | 4 | No |
| Directed Pickup | None | 50 | 50 | 50 | 10 | No |
| Group Pickup | None | 50 | 50 | 50 | 32 | No |
| Hunt Groups or | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 48 | No |

Calling Groups

The 3-digit dial plan might not provide enough extensions to support 100 groups.

ACD Groups, Hunt Groups, and Calling Groups all count towards the same total. For example, on a V3000 system, if you have 50 Hunt Groups, the system can also support any combination of 50 ACD and Calling Groups.

| Music On Hold | None | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | No | |
|---------------------|---------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|--|
| Paging | None | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | No | |
| Page Zones | None | 9 | 9 | 9 | 9 | No | |
| System Speed Dials | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | No | |
| Personal Speed Dial | ls None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | No | |

| Device/application Description | Per-Unit Device Count Toward Total System Count | Memory | NBX V3000: Max without Memory Upgrade | SuperStack 3 System Maximum | NBX 100 System Maximum | Device or Site License Required? |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------------|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Call Detail Reporting | None | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | No |
| Call Record and Monitor | None | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | No |
| TAPI Route Points | None | 100 | 100 | 100 | 48 | No |
| The 3-digit dial plan | might not provid | e enough exten | sions to support 10 | 00 TAPI Route Po | ints. | |

Table 10 Detailed Device Limits (continued)

Device Licenses

The basic NBX system includes default licenses. You can add licenses to increase the system capacity. <u>Table 11</u> shows the defaults and maximums for licensed items on each NBX platform.

 Table 11
 NBX Device Licensing Summary

| License | NBX 10 | 0 | SuperSt | tack 3 NBX | NBX V3 | 3000 |
|---|---------|-------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| | Default | Max. | Default | | Default | |
| Device | 200 | 200 | 250 | 1500 | 250 | 1500 |
| Voice mail (ports/hrs.) | 4/4 | 12/80 | 4/400 | 72/unlimited | 4/400 | 72/unlimited |
| Virtual Tie Lines | 1 | 8 | 1 | 48 | 1 | 48 |
| Disk Mirroring | na | na | 0 | 1 | na | na |
| NBX pcXset | 1 | 200 | 1 | 750 | 1 | 750 |
| NBX ConneXtions | 1 | 16 | 1 | 100 | 1 | 100 |
| NBX Media Driver | 1 | 96 | 1 | 750 | 1 | 750 |
| NBX VPIM Messaging License | 0 | Site | 0 | Site | 0 | Site |
| NBX 3rd-party Messaging License | 0 | Site | 0 | Site | 0 | Site |
| NBX Complement Attendant Software (CAS) License | 0 | Site | 0 | Site | 0 | Site |
| Call Record and Monitor License | 0 | Site | 0 | Site | 0 | Site |
| Automatic Call Distribution Agents | 2 | 200 | 2 | 200 | 2 | 200 |

| License | NBX 10 | NBX 100 | | SuperStack 3 NBX | | 3000 |
|--|----------|------------|---------|------------------|---------|------|
| | Default | Max. | Default | Max. | Default | Max. |
| Group 0 Devices (3100) | 0 | 200 | 0 | 1500 | 0 | 1500 |
| Group 1 Devices (3101, 3101SP, 3106, 3107) | 0 | 200 | 0 | 1500 | 0 | 1500 |
| Group 2 Devices (3103, 3102, 3105) | 0 | 200 | 0 | 1500 | 15 | 1500 |
| Group 3 Devices | Reserved | d for futu | re use. | | | |
| Group 4 Devices | Reserved | d for futu | re use. | | | |

 Table 11
 NBX Device Licensing Summary (continued)

NBX Licensing Summary Notes

- NBX cards, Analog Terminal Adapters, and legacy devices (1102, 2102, 2102-IR Business Telephones, 2101 Basic Telephones, and 1105 Attendant Consoles) do not require a license. The number of these devices is governed solely by the system device license.
- The NBX V3000 comes with four NBX Messaging ports and a limit of 400 hours of message storage. (A messaging port is used for each Automated Attendant session and each voice mail session.) If you want more than 4 ports, you must purchase and install additional NBX Messaging licenses. To go above 12 NBX Messaging ports, you must install the memory upgrade (3C10240) if you haven't already done so to upgrade the device limit. If you purchase additional NBX Messaging capacity, message storage hours are limited only by available disk space, however, the NBX administrator can establish limits on the number of messages, message length, and retention period.
- **Group Device** Licenses NBX Group Licensing provides a flexible system of licensing NBX telephones and attendant consoles. For licensing purposes, NBX devices are grouped according to the features the device can support. Lower cost devices that have fewer features are part of lower numbered License Groups while the more capable full-featured devices are part of the higher numbered License Groups.

Group 0 Devices

■ 3100 Entry Telephone

Group 1 Devices:

- 3101 Basic Telephone
- 3101SP Basic Telephone
- 3106C Cordless Telephone
- 3107C Cordless Telephone

Group 2 Devices:

- 3103 Manager's Telephone
- 3102 Business Telephone
- 3105 Attendant Console

Dynamic License Assignment NBX Group Licensing is a dynamic system that assigns licenses in the most efficient manner. A Group License can activate devices belonging to that group or devices with fewer features. For example, a Group 2 license normally activates Group 2 devices but it may also activate Group 1 or Group 0 devices. If a device needs a license and no license is available for that group, the system "loans" a license from a higher license group if a license is available in that group.

License loans are automatic. The system dynamically assigns available licenses to devices to achieve the most efficient use of the installed licenses. Dynamic allocation can cause a more valuable license to be used for a less valuable telephone. For example, using a Group 2 license for a Group 0 device might be desirable as an interim solution, but if you later add a Group 2 device, you would probably want to purchase a Group 0 license for the Group 0 telephone and use the Group 2 license for the Group 2 device.

These examples demonstrate the flexibility of NBX Group Licenses.

Example 1— All devices in the same License Group: You purchase and install a package of ten Group 2 Licenses on your SuperStack 3 NBX system and then add five 3102 Business Telephones, one 3103 Manager's Telephone and one 3105 Attendant Console for a total of seven Group 2 devices. The system has three Group 2 licenses still available.

Example 2 — **Borrowing from the next highest License Group:** You add a 3101 Basic Telephone (Group 1 device) to your SuperStack 3 NBX system, which has three Group 2 licenses available. You do not add a Group 1 license to the system. The system checks for the availability of a

Group 1 license. Since no Group 1 licenses are available, the system assigns a Group 2 license to the 3101 Basic Telephone. The system now has two Group 2 licenses available.

Example 3 — **Borrow from the highest License Group:** You add two 3100 Entry Telephones (Group 0 device) to your SuperStack 3 NBX system, which has two Group 2 licenses available. You do not add a Group 0 license to the system. The system checks for the availability of a Group 0 license, then checks for the availability of a Group 1 license, and since there are no Group 0 or 1 licenses available, assigns the Group 2 licenses to the 3100 Entry Telephones. The system now has no licenses available. Figure 18 shows the section of the License Usage Report that displays device license usage.

| Figure 18 | License Details | Information |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|

| Group 0 Devices License: | 0 | 0 |
|----------------------------|----|----|
| 3100 Phones: | 2 | |
| Loan From Group 1: | 0 | |
| Loan From Group 2: | 2 | |
| Group 1 Devices License: | 0 | 0 |
| 3101 Phones: | 1 | |
| 3106/3107 Cordless Phones: | 0 | |
| Loan To Group 0: | 0 | |
| Loan From Group 2: | 1 | |
| Group 2 Devices License: | 10 | 10 |
| 3102 Phones: | 5 | |
| 3103 Phones: | 1 | |
| 3105 Attendant Consoles: | 1 | |
| Loan To Group 0: | 2 | |
| Loan To Group 1: | 1 | |
| | | |

The first column in the License Usage Report shows the number of device licenses currently in use. The second column shows the number of licenses in each License Group that have been installed on the system.

Example 4 — **Dynamic License Group Adjustment:** You add another 3103 Manager's Telephone (Group 2 device) to your SuperStack 3 NBX system, which has no licenses available in any group. The system will not enable the new telephone. You could add another Group 2 license, but it would be more cost-effective to add a less expensive Group 0 license instead. After you add a Group 0 license, the system automatically reassigns licenses in this manner:

- Releases one of the Group 2 licenses that was assigned to one of the 3100 Entry Telephones.
- Assigns the new Group 0 license to the 3100 Telephone.
- Assigns the released Group 2 license to the new 3103 Telephone.

The system now has no licenses available.

Example 5 — **Manual License Group readjustment:** You add another 3103 Manager's Telephone (Group 2 device) to your SuperStack 3 NBX system, which has no licenses available in any group. Instead of adding a Group 0 license, as shown in Example 4, you could manually remove one of the telephones from the system to free a license. For example, you could use the NBX NetSet utility to remove the 3101 Basic Telephone. Since that telephone was using a Group 2 license, removing the telephone makes a Group 2 license available.

Group License Notes

- To view the number of Group Licenses you have installed on your system open the License Summary page in the NBX NetSet utility,
 Operations > Licenses. To view how the number of Group Licenses have been allocated, including licenses loaned to different groups, open the License Usage Report in the NBX NetSet utility, Operations > Licenses > Usage Report.
- To achieve the best licensing configuration, you should always add license keys to the system (**Operations > Licenses > Add License**) before you add devices.
- If you are removing a telephone to manually readjust licenses, you should first make sure that Auto Discover Telephones is disabled (System Configuration > System Settings > System-wide) to ensure that the telephone is not automatically added to the system again.
- A basic NBX V3000 system includes fifteen Group 2 Licenses.

Upgrading Device Licenses from R4.X to R5.0

Group Licensing is not available on systems prior to R5.0. Licensed devices that are installed on a system at the time that system is upgraded to R5.0 will have their licenses converted to appropriate License Groups:

- 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephone licenses convert to Group 1 Licenses
- 3102 Business Telephone licenses convert to Group 2 Licenses
- 3105 Attendant Console licenses convert to Group 2 Licenses

Rebooting from R5.XIf you reboot an R5.0 system to an earlier software version, these licenseto R4.Xconversions are in effect:

- Device licenses that were converted to Group 1 and Group 2 licenses during the upgrade to R5.0 are active as 3101, 3102 and 3105 licenses.
- Group 1 licenses applied after the upgrade to R5.0 are converted to 3101 licenses.
- Group 2 licenses applied after the upgrade to R5.0 are converted to 3102 licenses.
- Devices introduced at R5.0, 3103 Manager's Telephones, 3100 Entry Telephones, and 3106C and 3107C Cordless Telephones will not be recognized. These devices were not supported prior to release R5.0.

Group Licensing, 3105 Attendant Consoles, and R4.X Software

If you reboot to R4.4 or R4.3 from R5.0, Group 2 licenses are converted to 3102 device licenses, which means that a 3105 Attendant Console, which is a Group 2 device, could become unavailable. The following examples show what happens to 3105 Attendant Consoles when you reboot from R5.0 to R4.4 or R4.3.

Example 1: Your system is running R4.3 (or R4.4) software. The system has one 3105 Attendant Console installed and you have one 3105 device license installed on the system. You upgrade the system to R5.0. The 3105 device license becomes a Group 2 license and the 3105 continues to operate. You reboot the system to R4.3 or R4.4 and the 3105 continues to operate under the original 3105 device license.

Example 2: Your system is running R4.3 (or R4.4) software. The system has one 3105 Attendant Console installed and you have one 3105 device license installed on the system. You upgrade the system to R5.0 software, and then add another 3105 and a Group 2 license. You reboot the system to R4.3 or R4.4. One of the 3105 Attendant Consoles continues to work and the other does not because the Group 2 license that was used by the 3105 while operating under R5.0 is converted to a 3102 device license. To enable the 3105 under R4.4 or R4.3, you need to add a 3105 device license.

Example 3: Your system is running R4.3 (or R4.4) software. The system has one 3105 Attendant Console installed and you have *two* 3105 device licenses installed on the system. You upgrade the system to R5.0 software, and then add another 3105 and a Group 2 license. You reboot the system to R4.3 or R4.4. Both 3105s continues to work.

58 CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

INSTALLING SYSTEM HARDWARE COMPONENTS

This chapter explains how to install standard and optional hardware components for the NBX Networked Telephony System. This chapter includes information about using the Auto Discover feature to add telephones, however, specific information about adding telephones is in <u>Chapter 3</u>. This chapter covers these topics:

- Introduction
- International Feature Support
- Installation Requirements
- Installation Questions
- Before You Begin Installation
- Important Safety Information
- Unpacking and Examining the Components
- Installing the NBX System Hardware
- <u>Configuring NBX System Networking</u>
- <u>Connecting Cards and Devices</u>
- <u>Selecting Regional Software and Components</u>
- <u>Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration</u>
- <u>Connecting Telephone Lines</u>
- Adding External Hardware
- <u>Configuring Routing Devices</u>

| Introduction | This guide uses the following definitions for administrators, users, and callers on the NBX system: |
|----------------------------------|---|
| | Administrator — The person responsible for managing and maintaining the LAN. This person has "administrator" privileges on the system |
| | User — A person with user login privileges on the system |
| | Caller — A person calling into the system |
| International Feature Support | For international users, the following features and devices warrant special attention. |
| Power Fail Transfer | For the Power Fail Transfer (PFT) feature, is available only in North America. |
| À | CAUTION: You should have access to a mobile or analog telephone that is connected to your standard PSTN. |
| Analog Terminal Connectors | The NBX Analog Terminal Adapter, the ATA port on the NBX V3000, and each port on the NBX Analog Terminal Card may require a telephone connector for use outside North America. Contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner for information on country-specific requirements. |
| Language Support | The NBX Resource Pack CD includes these localized components: |
| | Telephone tones and cadences that match those used by telephone companies in different countries |
| | Localized online user documentation |
| | Localized voice prompts |
| | If the required language is not provided in the voice prompts, which you can load and activate using the NBX NetSet utility, you can record new Automated Attendant main menu and system-wide Time-dependent greetings. For information on how to modify an Automated Attendant, see the "Automated Attendant" section in Chapter 6, "NBX Messaging," in the NBX Administrator's Guide. |
| | |

Installation Requirements



sections before you install the NBX system.

Verify that you meet the prerequisites that are detailed in the following

3Com does not support more than one NBX system on a local area network. You can connect NBX systems over a WAN using VTLs, as described the NBX Administrator's Guide, however, installing more than one NCP on a LAN can cause unpredictable results.

Electrical Requirements

- Verify that the site meets the following electrical requirements.
 - Each NBX chassis requires an electrical connection.
 - The NBX system should have its own breaker-protected circuit that uses the standard, three-wire, grounded configuration.
 - Verify that there are enough outlets and circuit capacity in the chosen location to supply power to the NBX chassis and any auxiliary equipment that you install, such as a paging amplifier and an MOH device. The label on each chassis lists the electrical requirements of the system.
 - You can eliminate the power adapter for a telephone by using a powered Ethernet cable. See <u>"Connecting Power to a 3Com</u> <u>Telephone"</u> in <u>Chapter 3</u> for more information.



CAUTION: 3Com strongly recommends that you use UL listed surge suppression devices for the telephones and the local telephone lines and an uninterruptible power supply for each NBX chassis.

Environmental Requirements

You can install the NBX system in any clean, dry, well-ventilated location. Take these environmental guidelines into consideration:

 The area must be safe from water damage. A wet basement, a utility closet, or an area near a window are not proper locations.



CAUTION: Do not use the NBX system outdoors.

- The area must be safe from physical interference. For example, do not put the chassis where it might be struck by a swinging door or where cables might be disturbed by a door or by people passing by.
- Do not install the NBX system in an area that is exposed to strong electromagnetic fields, dust, smoke, or airborne debris.

 Verify that the installation site has sufficient cooling and air circulation to maintain ambient temperatures from 0 °C through 40 °C (32 °F through 104 °F) and a humidity range of 5% to 85%, noncondensing.

PhysicalWhen you install an NBX system, verify that the installation site meets**Requirements**these physical requirements:

- The NBX system should be installed in a secure area. Telephone service and voice messaging are crucial business services. Protect them from tampering or accidental interference.
- To rack-mount an NBX system, use a standard 486-mm (19-in.) equipment rack, properly installed and grounded according to the manufacturer's instructions.
 - The NBX V3000 is 42 mm (1.6 in.) high and 355 mm (14 in.) deep. All data connections are on the front of the chassis and power connections are on the back.
 - The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis is 13.3 cm (5.25 in.) high and 30.5 cm (12 in.) deep. All data connections are on the front of the chassis and power connections are on the back.
 - The NBX 100 chassis is 10.5 in. (264.7 mm) high and 23 cm (9 in.) deep. All connections are on the front of the chassis.
- Allow at least 8 cm (3 in.) of space on either side of the NBX chassis for proper ventilation.

Local Telephone
ServiceBefore you install the NBX system, be sure that the installation site meets
the following local telephone service requirements:

- The local telephone company has installed local telephone lines and assigned telephone numbers.
- If necessary, you have extended the wires from a centrally located telephone interface panel to the installation site.
- Each analog telephone line has dial tone.



CAUTION: 3Com strongly recommends that you use UL-listed surge suppression devices on all local telephone lines.

 If you are installing an optional BRI-ST, T1, or E1 Digital Line Card, verify that the telephone company has installed BRI-ST, T1, or E1 lines and run them to the installation location.

| Installation Questions | If you have not already planned the installation, the following topics discuss issues that you may encounter when you install the telephone system. |
|---|---|
| Who Should Install the NBX System? | A technician who understands Ethernet 10BASE-T and 100BASE-T cabling requirements and telephony configuration should install and configure the system. If you are using the IP capabilities of the NBX system, the technician also needs to understand IP, subnetworks, and DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol). |
| | After the initial installation, the local administrator should be able to install additional telephones and manage the system. |
| | If the cabling scheme has not been designed and installed, you should consult a qualified network design engineer. Although it is not difficult to set up a small 10BASE-T or 100BASE-T LAN, a well-designed network should accommodate future growth without redesign. NBX system documentation does not explain the workings of Ethernet or IP, or the requirements for cabling a network. |
| Does the Telephone Company Need to Be Involved? | You must rely on the local telephone company to provide one or more loop-start lines and the telephone number or numbers. A fax machine can connect to the NBX system through an Analog Terminal Adapter. |
| Ĩ | CAUTION: To avoid damage to any 3Com telephone, do not connect it directly to a standard telephone line. Although the RJ-11 connector for a traditional telephone fits into the 3Com telephone's RJ-45 jack, the electrical interfaces are not compatible and the telephone will not work. |
| Is Any Additional | You may need some of the following components: |
| Equipment Required? | To configure the NBX system, you need a computer equipped with a browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer Release 5.5 or higher, a network interface card, and a CD-ROM drive. You also need to provide IP configuration parameters for the system. |
| | Computers that use Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) applications need an operating system that supports the Microsoft TAPI 2.X standard, such as Windows XP or Windows 2000, and a browser to download the TAPI-related NBX support software through the NBX NetSet utility. |
| | |

- If you choose to install the NBX system in an equipment rack, you need a standard 486 mm (19 in.) rack.
- You may need 10BASE-T or 100BASE-T Ethernet cable and connectors to connect the telephones to the hub.
- 3Com strongly recommends that you use surge suppression devices on all local telephone lines.
- 3Com telephones and attendant consoles that support Power over Ethernet (PoE) do not come with AC power adapters. You can power these devices with any IEEE 802.3af-compliant power source or with optional AC power adapters. The packing sheet that ships with each device shows the device power options.

The following devices can be connected to an NBX system:

- Music-on-hold device, such as a radio, tape player, disk player, or computer sound card, equipped with a line out (600 ohm) connection can be connected directly into the NCP to provide audio for callers waiting on hold.
- Third-party 10BASE-T or 100BASE-T Ethernet hubs and switches.
- An ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network) router, Frame Relay Access Device (FRAD) router, or Voice Over IP gateway.
- A WAN. You can access NBX systems located at branch offices through a wide area network (WAN). Before you use the NBX system for voice over the WAN, verify that the WAN offers adequate bandwidth, and that the gateways can be configured to provide the correct routing information.
- External paging amplifier. The NBX system includes an RJ-11 jack to connect an externally powered paging amplifier.
- Standard telephone for power-fail situations. In the United States, you can connect a standard POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service 2500-series compatible) telephone to an RJ-11 connector on the front of an NBX Analog Line Card or an NBX V3000.

What Effect Does an NBX System Have on a LAN?

A 10 Mbps Ethernet LAN can support a fully configured, fully utilized NBX 100 system. A 100 Mbps Ethernet LAN can support a fully configured, fully utilized NBX SuperStack 3 system or NBX V3000 system. That is, a 10 Mbps Ethernet LAN with 200 "voice devices" (3Com telephones and outside telephone lines) can support the toll-quality audio provided by the NBX 100 system even when all 200 devices are in use.

What External Devices Can Connect to an NBX System? Similarly, a 100 Mpbs LAN can support toll-quality audio with a fully configured SuperStack 3 NBX system or NBX V3000 system. If you use an Ethernet switch, verify that it supports the 802.1P and 802.1Q specifications.

Silence Suppression and Bandwidth

Silence suppression enables you to reduce network traffic. When silence suppression is enabled, the NBX device detects silence in the audio stream, such as a pause in conversation, and stops sending packets. The receiving NBX device generates white noise for the periods represented by silence indicator packets so that the listener does not hear true silence and worry that the call has been disconnected. The receiving NBX device can be another 3Com telephone, or for external calls, it can be an analog line port or a channel on an NBX Digital Line Card.

A careful listener might notice the difference between generated and actual background noise, so silence suppression is turned off by default. Silence Suppression settings result in a small compromise to audio quality. Do not enable Silence Suppression unless you are trying to solve bandwidth constraint issues.

You can enable or disable silence suppression for the entire system or for individual telephones and line card ports.

NBX System Quality of Service

Quality of Service (QoS) is a way to allocate resources in data switches and routers so that data can be prioritized, with the most time-critical data receiving higher priority. At Layer 2, the NBX system supports Ethernet 802.1Q, "Standard for Virtual Bridged Local Area Networks," and its associated specification, 802.1P, "Standard for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks, Supplement to Media Access Control (MAC) Bridges: Traffic Class Expediting and Dynamic Multicast Filtering." These IEEE Ethernet standards define how Ethernet packets can be prioritized.

At Layer 3, the NBX supports IP Precedence, also called IP Type Of Service (ToS), to specify the class of service for each packet. The default hexadecimal value for NBX system IP ToS settings is 0xb8.

Low-bandwidth Connections

You can configure a telephone to operate in lower-bandwidth environments such as a single B channel of a BRI ISDN line or other links with bandwidth as low as 56 Kbps.

- The preferred method for enabling a low-bandwidth connection is to select G729 audio, forcing the device to use lower-bandwidth compressed audio when communicating with other system devices.
- Alternatively, you can configure the telephone as a low-bandwidth device by disabling some of the internal features such as paging, conferencing, and music-on-hold. A check box in the NBX NetSet Device Configuration screen automatically selects the best parameters for low-bandwidth connections.



You can also connect an NBX Telephone to the system over a broadband connection and that is not considered a low-bandwidth connection. See the NBX Administrator's Guide for information about connecting a remote telephone over a broadband connection.

| Before You Begin | Before you install the NBX system hardware: |
|--|---|
| Installation | , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , |
| Installation | Complete the system plan. See the System Planning Guide on the NBX Resource Pack CD. |
| | Verify that the external telephone lines are active and present at the installation location. |
| | Gather the system components at the installation location. |
| | Verify that an existing LAN is in place and is operational and that LAN port connections are available. |
| | Read and follow the safety notes and precautions later in this chapter |
| Required and Recommended Tools and Equipment | These items are typically required to install an NBX system: |
| | Screwdrivers (flat and Phillips) |
| | Pliers |
| | Antistatic grounding strap |
| | Punch down tool |
| | Test set |
| | Four rack screws appropriate to the rack |

Important Safety Information

Before you install or remove any components or perform any maintenance procedures on the system, you must read the following safety information.



WARNING: Verify that each NBX 100 Chassis is set to the correct voltage for your country requirements. The voltage is indicated on the voltage selector switch next to the main cable inlet on the front panel of each chassis. (See <u>Figure 19</u>.)





The label to the left of the voltage selector switch shows the 115 and 230 volt selection positions. If the incorrect voltage for your country is set, use a small flat-blade screwdriver to toggle the switch up or down on each chassis.

The NBX V3000 and the SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 work automatically with either 115 volt or 230 volt power, so they have no mechanism for changing voltage.



WARNING: The system must be installed in a secure (locked) area.

The components and telephones of the NBX system are electronic devices. To avoid injury and damage to the equipment, follow these important safety precautions when you install, use, or service it:

- Allow only qualified personnel to install and remove the unit.
- Always connect the unit to a grounded (protective earthed) outlet to comply with international safety and EMC standards.
- Read and understand all instructions.
- Always disconnect a device from its power source before you clean it.



CAUTION: Each of the two power supply units in a SuperStack 3 NBX with redundant power supplies has its own overcurrent protection device which operates independently — the overcurrent device for one power supply does not protect the second power supply. You must connect both AC power cords to provide power to both of the power supplies.

- Do not disassemble components of the system. If you suspect that a card, chassis, or telephone is defective, call a service representative.
- Do not use this product near water. Do not install this product or a telephone in a damp area, such as a basement.
- Never cover or block the ventilation holes on the chassis or telephones. Proper ventilation is required to ensure normal operation of each component and to avoid component failures.



- WARNING: Never push objects into ventilation holes on the chassis or telephone. Electrical voltages in system components can cause bodily harm.
- Do not use the telephone during an electrical storm. Lightning poses a remote risk of electric shock through any telephone system.
- Never use a telephone that is near the source of a gas leak to report the leak.
- Each NBX system and chassis is equipped with a three-prong grounding plug. Do not defeat the protection offered by the plug by clipping the grounding prong or by using an adapter to connect the system to a two-wire power source.
- Do not staple the power cord or otherwise attach it to building surfaces.
- Do not use any AC power converter on a 3Com device other than the one that is shipped with the device. On 3Com PoE-compliant devices, the power converter is an optional component.
- Power Cord Set:
 - For European countries, see <u>Table 12</u>. If your country is not listed specifically, use the power cord set information for Europe.
 - For countries outside of Europe, you must use a power cord set that complies with the relevant national standards for cable type and appliance coupling.

| Table 12 | Regulatory | Requirements |
|----------|------------|--------------|
|----------|------------|--------------|

| Country or Region | Power Cord Set Details |
|-------------------|--|
| Europe | The supply plug must comply with CEE 7/7 ("SCHUKO") |
| | The main cord must be <har> or <basec> marked and be of type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec></har> |
| United Kingdom | The supply plug must comply with BS1363 (3-pin 13 A) and be fitted with a 5A fuse that complies with BS1362. |
| | The main cord must be <har> or <basec> marked and be of type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec></har> |
| Italy | The supply plug must comply with CEI23-16/VII. |
| | The main cord must be <har> or <basec> marked and be of type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec></har> |
| Denmark | The supply plug must comply with section 107-2-D1, standard DK2-1a or DK2-5a. |
| Switzerland | The supply plug must comply with SEV/ASE 1011. |

- The appliance coupler (that is, the connector to the *unit*, not the connector to the *wall plug*) must have a configuration that mates with an EN60320/IEC320 appliance inlet.
- The socket outlet must be near the unit and easily accessible. You can remove power from the unit only by disconnecting the power cord from the outlet. If your SuperStack 3 NBX has redundant power supplies, you must disconnect both cords from the wall.
- This unit operates under SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) conditions according to IEC 60950. These conditions are maintained only if the equipment to which the unit is connected also operates under SELV conditions.
- France only:

This unit cannot be powered from IT (Impédance à la Terre) supplies. If your supplies are of IT type, this unit must be powered by 230V (2P+T) via an isolation transformer ratio 1:1, with the secondary connection point labelled Neutral, connected directly to earth (ground).



When this system is used in Australia, you must connect the equipment to the telephone network via a line-isolating unit (LIU) that complies with ACA TS001-1997.



CAUTION: (Australia only.) NBX equipment will be inoperable when main power fails.

Lithium Battery Safety



The following information is important. Read it carefully.

WARNING: The battery is not field replaceable. If you suspect a battery failure, contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner.

There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace the battery only with the same or equivalent type as recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Consignes Importantes de Sécurité



Nous vous demandons de lire attentivement les consignes suivantes de sécurité avant d'installer ou de retirer l'appareil.



AVERTISSEMENT: Les avertissements présentent des consignes que vous devez respecter pour garantir votre sécurité personnelle. Vous devez respecter attentivement toutes les consignes.



AVERTISSEMENT: Vérifiez que le systeme est paramétré sur le réglage de tension conforme aux exigences du pays d'utilisation.

AVERTISSEMENT: Le systeme doit être rangé (verrouillé) dans un endroit sûr et seul le personnel ayant reçu une formation peut y avoir accès.

- L'installation et la dépose de cette unité doivent être confiés à un personnel qualifié.
- L'unité ne devrait pas etre branchée à une prise de courant alternatif (C.A.) sous aucun prétexte sans un branchement mise à la terre protectrice (mise à la masse).
- Vous devez raccorder cette unité à une sortie mise à la terre protectrice (mise à la masse) afin de respecter les normes internationales de sécurité et les normes de compatibilité électromagnétique.
- Cordon Électrique: Pour les pays européens, consultez le tableau 9 et utilisez les informations sur le cordon d'alimentation pour Europe si votre pays ne figure pas dans la liste. Pour les pays noneuropéens, utilisez obligatoirement un cordon d'alimentation conforme aux normes nationales pertinentes au couplage d'appareils et aux types de câblages.

| Table 13Cordon Électrique | Table | 13 | Cordon | Électrique |
|---------------------------|-------|----|--------|------------|
|---------------------------|-------|----|--------|------------|

| Détails du Cordon Électrique |
|--|
| La prise secteur doit être conforme aux normes CEE 7/7 ("SCHUKO") |
| Le cordon secteur doit porter la mention <har> ou</har> <basec> et doit être de type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec> |
| La prise secteur doit être conforme aux normes BS1363 (tripolaire, 13 amp) et équipée d'un fusible 5A à conformité BS1362. |
| Le cordon secteur doit porter la mention <har> ou <basec> et doit être de type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec></har> |
| • La prise secteur doit être conforme aux normes CEI23-16/VII. |
| Le cordon secteur doit porter la mention <har> ou <basec> et doit être de type HO3VVF3GO.75 (minimum).</basec></har> |
| La prise mâle d'alimentation doit respecter la section 107-2 D1 de la norme DK2 1a ou DK2 5a. |
| La prise mâle d'alimentation doit respecter la norme SEV/ASE 1011. |
| |

- Le coupleur d'appareil (le connecteur de l'unité et non pas la prise murale) doit respecter une configuration qui permet un branchement sur une entrée d'appareil EN60320/IEC 320.
- La prise secteur doit se trouver à proximité de l'appareil et son accès doit être facile. Vous ne pouvez mettre l'appareil hors circuit qu'en débranchant son cordon électrique au niveau de cette prise.
- L'appareil fonctionne à une tension extrêmement basse de sécurité qui est conforme à la norme IEC 60950. Ces conditions ne sont maintenues que si l'équipement auquel il est raccordé fonctionne dans les mêmes conditions.

Uniquement pour la France:

Ce groupe ne peut pas être alimenté par un dispositif à impédance à la terre. Si vos alimentations sont du type impédance à la terre, ce groupe doit être alimenté par une tension de 230 V (2 P+T) par le biais d'un transformateur d'isolement à rapport 1:1, avec un point secondaire de connexion portant l'appellation Neutre et avec raccordement direct à la terre (masse).

Batterie au lithium



Veuillez lire attentivement la note suivante.

AVERTISSEMENT: Le remplacement incorrect de batterie au lithium présente un risque d'explosion. Remplacez cette batterie par une batterie identique ou de type équivalent, en respectant les recommandations du constructeur. Vous devez vous débarrasser des batteries usées en respectant les consignes du constructeur.

Wichtige Sicherheitsinformati onen



Sie müssen die folgenden Sicherheitsinformationen sorgfältig durchlesen, bevor Sie das Gerät installieren oder ausbauen.

WARNHINWEIS: Warnhinweise enthalten Anweisungen, die Sie zu Ihrer eigenen Sicherheit befolgen müssen. Alle Anweisungen sind sorgfältig zu befolgen.



WARNHINWEIS: Achten Sie darauf, daß an dem NBX die Ihrem Land entsprechende Spannung eingestellt ist.



WARNHINWEIS: Das NBX muß an einem sicheren (abgeschlossenen) Ort aufbewahrt werden, zu dem nur ausgebildete Mitarbeiter Zugang haben.

- Die Installation und der Ausbau des Geräts darf nur durch Fachpersonal erfolgen.
- Das Gerät nicht an eine Wechselstromsteckdose anschließen, die über keine Schutzerdung verfügt.
- Das Gerät muß an eine Steckdose mit Schutzerdung angeschlossen werden, die internationalen Sicherheitsvorschriften und den Vorschriften zur EMV entspricht.
- Netzkabelsatz:

Für europäische Länder, siehe Tabelle 10 und einen Netzkabelsatz verwenden für Europa wenn Ihr Land nicht einzeln aufgeführt ist. Für nichteuropäische Länder müssen Sie einen Netzkabelsatz verwenden, der die entsprechenden nationalen Geräteanschluß- und Kabeltypnormen erfüllt.

Table 14Anschlußkabelsatz

| Land | Anschlußkabelsatz |
|--------|--|
| Europa | Der Netzstecker muß die Norm CEE 7/7 erfüllen ("SCHUKO"). |
| | Das Netzkabel muß vom Typ HO3VVF3GO.75 (Mindestanforderung) sein und die Aufschrift <har> oder <basec> tragen.</basec></har> |
| Land | Anschlußkabelsatz |
|---------------------------|---|
| Vereinigtes Königreich | Der Netzstecker muß die Norm BS1363 (13 Ampere, 3 Stifte) erfüllen und mit einer 5-A-Sicherung gemäß Norm BS1362 ausgestattet sein. |
| | Das Netzkabel muß vom Typ HO3VVF3GO.75 (Mindestanforderung) sein und die Aufschrift <har> oder <basec> tragen.</basec></har> |
| Italien | Der Netzstecker muß die Norm CEI23-16/VII erfüllen. |
| | Das Netzkabel muß vom Typ HO3VVF3GO.75 (Mindestanforderung) sein und die Aufschrift <har> oder <basec> tragen.</basec></har> |
| Dänemark | Der Netzstecker muß die Vorschriften laut Abschnitt 107-2-D1 der Norm DK2-1a oder DK2-5a erfüllen. |
| Schweiz | Der Netzstecker muß die Norm SEV/ASE 1011 erfüllen |

 Table 14
 Anschlußkabelsatz (continued)

- Der Gerätestecker (der Anschluß an das Gerät, nicht der Wandsteckdosenstecker) muß eine passende Konfiguration für einen Geräteeingang gemäß EN60320/IEC320 haben.
- Die Netzsteckdose muß in der Nähe des Geräts und leicht zugänglich sein. Die Stromversorgung des Geräts kann nur durch Herausziehen des Gerätenetzkabels aus der Netzsteckdose unterbrochen werden.
- Der Betrieb dieses Geräts erfolgt unter den SELV-Bedingungen (Sicherheitskleinstspannung) gemäß IEC 60950. Diese Bedingungen sind nur gegeben, wenn auch die an das Gerät angeschlossenen Geräte unter SELV-Bedingungen betrieben werden.

Nur f ür Frankreich:

Diese Einheit kann nicht über Anschlüsse des Typs IT⁺ betrieben werden. Wenn Sie über IT-Anschlüsse verfügen, muß die Einheit über einen geerdeten Trenner mit einem Übersetzungsverhältnis 1:1 mit 230 V (2P+T) betrieben werden; dabei muß der zweite Anschlußpunkt die Bezeichnung Neutral tragen.

Lithiumbatterie

Bitte lesen Sie den folgenden Hinweis sorgfältig durch.



WARNHINWEIS: Wird die Lithiumbatterie falsch ersetzt, besteht Explosionsgefahr. Die Batterie nach den Empfehlungen des Herstellers durch eine Batterie des gleichen oder eines gleichwertigen Typs ersetzen. Verbrauchte Batterien nach den Angaben des Herstellers entsorgen.

| Unpacking and Examining the Components | Unpack the system components and examine them. Depending on the size and configuration of the system that was ordered, there may be multiple chassis and line cards. If you have not received all components, contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner. |
|--|--|
| Installing the NBX System Hardware | Before you begin to install the hardware, you can perform optional steps: <u>Recording MAC Addresses</u> <u>Optionally Upgrading NBX Memory</u> |
| Recording MAC Addresses | After you install the system disk drive, you should record the MAC addresses of the ports that interface with CO equipment. If you will be installing optional cards into a chassis, 3Com recommends that you install one card at a time, and that you install the cards in the order of the MAC addresses of the ports on the card. This process ensures that the NBX system assigns sequential, contiguous groups of device extensions to each board. If you enable the Auto Discover process to configure the cards, you can then use the NBX NetSet utility to view the MAC address of each individual port. |
| | A well-organized physical configuration can simplify: |
| | Management of incoming telephone lines, by associating line card ports with specific telephone numbers |
| | Troubleshooting, by associating groups of channel numbers with specific cards |
| | System expansion |
| | NBX V3000 |
| | To determine the MAC address of the analog lines of the NBX V3000, view the label on the back of the NBX V3000. The MAC address is labeled FXO MAC Address . All four analog line ports share one MAC address. After the ports are discovered by the NBX Auto Discover process, they are differentiated in the NBX NetSet utility by a channel number, 1-4. |
| | Optional NBX Cards |
| | To determine the MAC addresses of the ports on optional NBX Analog Line Cards, NBX Analog Terminal Cards, and NBX Digital Line Cards, |

| | view the MAC address label attached to each card. MAC address labels are located on the component side of NBX cards. All four ports on a card share one MAC address and they are differentiated by a channel number, 1-4. After a card is inserted into a chassis, the MAC address is not visible. |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ì | On Analog Line Card 3C10114, which is no longer in production, each port has a different MAC address and port addresses are consecutive. A label on the card shows the base MAC address, which is the address for port 1. The other three ports are incremented versions of the base MAC address. |
| Optionally Upgrading NBX Memory | The NBX V3000 and SuperStack 3 NBX can accept a memory upgrade module. If your system requires a memory upgrade, see the instruction sheet that comes with the memory kit: |
| | NBX V3000 Memory Upgrade Kit — 3C10240 |
| | SuperStack 3 NBX Memory Upgrade Kit — 3C10233 |
| Mounting an NBX 100 | To mount the Call Processor chassis in an equipment rack or on the wall, |
| Chassis | you need: |
| Chassis | you need:Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) |
| Chassis | |
| Chassis | Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) |
| Chassis | Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) Four mounting screws (supplied with the Call Processor) |
| Chassis | Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) Four mounting screws (supplied with the Call Processor) Phillips screwdriver |
| Chassis | Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) Four mounting screws (supplied with the Call Processor) Phillips screwdriver Drill and drill bit (wall-mount only) |
| Chassis | Two mounting brackets (supplied with the Call Processor) Four mounting screws (supplied with the Call Processor) Phillips screwdriver Drill and drill bit (wall-mount only) Level (wall-mount only) |

Mounting the NBX 100 Chassis in an Equipment Rack

To mount the NBX 100 chassis in an equipment rack:



Verify that the equipment rack is properly installed and grounded and that the installation area is properly ventilated.

1 Attach the two mounting brackets securely to the sides of the NBX 100 chassis, using the upper and lower holes in each of the brackets and the two holes near the front of the chassis. See <u>Figure 20</u>.





2 Install one screw into each vertical rail of the rack. Leave a space of at least 6.5 cm (2.5 in.) between this location and any other equipment in the rack.

Do not tighten the screws. Thread them just far enough so that they are secure. The slots on the bottom of the Call Processor chassis mounting brackets slip onto these screws.

- **3** Lift the chassis and slip the keyed slots of the mounting brackets onto the two screws you installed in Step 1.
- **4** Hold the chassis in place and install a mounting screw in the top keyed slot of each bracket.
- **5** Tighten all four screws securely.

Mounting the NBX 100 Chassis on a Wall

To mount the NBX 100 system chassis on a wall:



Before you wall-mount a chassis, prepare an area by attaching a suitable mounting surface securely to the wall studs. For effective cooling air flow,

do not mount multiple chassis side by side. If you do, one chassis draws in warm air from the other, limiting the effectiveness of the cooling fans.

1 Install the brackets at the back of the chassis, as shown in Figure 21.

Figure 21 Attaching Wall Mounting Brackets to the NBX 100 Chassis



2 Use the dimensions shown in Figure 22 to mark the locations where you will drill the pilot holes into the mounting surface.

Figure 22 Chassis Wall-mount Dimensions





CAUTION: If you wall-mount the NBX 100 chassis, you must attach the chassis securely to a plywood mounting board which is firmly attached to the wall. A fully configured 6-slot chassis can weigh up to 13.5 kg (30 lb).

- **3** Drill pilot holes at the locations you marked.
- **4** Install the two lower mounting screws.

Do not tighten the screws. Thread them just far enough so that they will support the weight of the NBX 100 chassis.

- **5** Lift the chassis and slide the two keyed mounting brackets over the screws in the wall.
- **6** While holding the chassis in place, install screws into the top holes of each mounting bracket, and then tighten all four screws.

Installing the
SuperStack 3 NBXThe SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 System is composed of the SuperStack 3
NBX Call Processor and one or more SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis.
The Call Processor contains a factory-installed disk drive and call
processor circuit board. The chassis are used to contain the interface
cards. You are now ready to mount the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor
in a rack.

Rack-mounting the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor

To install the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor, mount it in an equipment rack and apply power. For an overview of the Call Processor and its components, see <u>"SuperStack 3 NBX Gateway Chassis"</u> in <u>Chapter 1</u>.

To mount the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor, you require the following tools and materials:

- Four mounting screws
- Phillips screwdriver or wrench



Verify that the equipment rack is properly installed and grounded, and that the installation area is properly ventilated.

1 Install one screw into each vertical rail of the 19-inch rack. Leave at least 6.5 cm (2.5 inches) above other equipment in the rack.

Do not tighten the screws. Thread them just far enough so that they are secure. The slots on the bottom of the Call Processor mounting brackets slip onto these screws.

- **2** Verify that the Call Processor mounting brackets are securely installed on the front of the box.
- **3** Lift the Call Processor and slip the keyed slots of the mounting brackets onto the two screws you installed in Step 1.
- **4** Hold the Call Processor in place, install a mounting screw in the top hole of each bracket, and then tighten all four screws securely.

You are now ready to mount the NBX Gateway Chassis. For an overview Mounting the **NBX Gateway Chassis** of this chassis, see <u>"SuperStack 3 NBX Gateway Chassis</u>" in <u>Chapter 1</u>. The tools, materials, and procedures for rack-mounting the NBX Gateway Chassis are essentially identical to those for mounting the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor. For more detailed information, see "Installing the NBX System Hardware" on page 74. **Installing a Second** Disk mirroring is supported on the SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 only. Disk **Disk for Disk** mirroring provides the ability to run a second disk in parallel with the first. Mirroring This section describes how to install your second disk when you are setting up your NBX system. While the primary disk is already mounted in your Network Call Processor chassis, the second disk (if you purchased one) is packaged separately for you to install. If you are not installing a second disk with your NBX system, you can skip this section and proceed to "Powering Your NBX System" on page 80.



Disk Mirroring is an optional feature. If you do not install a second disk when you first install your Network Telephone System, you can purchase an upgrade kit at a later time.



CAUTION: To avoid damage to electronic circuits, always wear an anti-static grounding strap when handling the disk drive or NBX system components. When you ground the strap, do not ground it to an NBX chassis because the chassis is not grounded until you install it in a properly grounded setting.

To install an additional disk drive for disk mirroring:

- 1 Install the key code for your disk mirroring license.
- 2 Shut down system software.
- **3** Turn off power to your system. If your SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor has redundant power supplies you must disconnect both supplies.
- **4** Remove the disk drive tray on your Network Call Processor.
- **5** Unpack the second disk drive and install it in slot number 2 of the disk tray.
- **6** Connect the ribbon cable correctly.
- 7 Re-insert the disk drive tray.

After you add power to the system, disk synchronization begins automatically and finishes in approximately 60 to 90 minutes, depending on the amount of information on disk 1 that must be mirrored on disk 2.

| Powering Your NBX System | To turn on power to the NBX system and the optional NBX chassis, follow these steps: |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Attach a power cord to the back of each unit. For an NBX 100, a SuperStack 3 NBX, or a chassis, attaching the power cord applies power to the unit. For an NBX V3000, you must also press the power button on the back of the unit to the ON position. |
| 2 | Allow approximately 3 minutes for the system to complete the boot process. |
| | Examine the status lights (LEDs) on the front panel to ensure that the system is running properly: |
| | • For a description of NBX V3000 status lights, see <u>Figure 1</u> on <u>page 22</u> . |
| | For a description of SuperStack 3 NBX status lights, see <u>Figure 2</u> on page 24. |
| | ■ For a description of NBX 100 status lights, see <u>Figure 4</u> on <u>page 28</u> . |
| | You are now ready to establish network/LAN Connectivity. See <u>"Configuring NBX System Networking"</u> next. |
| | |
| Configuring NBX | Configuring the networking for the NBX system involves these steps: |
| Configuring NBX System Networking | Configuring the networking for the NBX system involves these steps: <u>Establishing IP Connectivity</u> |
| | |
| | <u>Establishing IP Connectivity</u> |
| | <u>Establishing IP Connectivity</u> <u>Modifying Default IP Settings</u> |
| | Establishing IP Connectivity Modifying Default IP Settings Establishing LAN Connections |



CAUTION: Connecting two NBX systems to the same subnetwork (for example, using IP addresses 10.233.20.100 and 10.233.20.200 for two NCPs) is unsupported.

With most installations, you need to change the IP settings of the NBX system to conform to the network. The IP settings include:

- Host Name A name for the system, up to 30 characters in length, including spaces, underscores, and hyphens.
- IP Address An IP address for the NBX system that is consistent with your local area network. Consult your network administrator if you need assistance.
- Default Gateway An IP address for the gateway through which you access the NBX system. If all devices (telephones, adaptors, and cards) are on the same subnet as the NCP, you do not need to specify a gateway IP address. Consult your network administrator if you need assistance.
- Subnet Mask An IP address mask that is consistent with your local area network. Consult your network administrator if you need assistance.

To help you determine if you need to make changes to the NBX system IP settings, see <u>Table 15</u>, later in this section. To avoid address conflicts with devices on your local network, change the IP settings of NBX system *before* you connect the system to the LAN.

Summary of how to change the IP settings of the NBX system:

- Temporarily change the IP address of your computer to conform with the default IP settings of the NBX system.
- Connect your computer to the NBX system.
- Use the NBX NetSet utility to modify the IP settings of the NBX system.
- Restore the IP settings of your computer and reconnect it to the LAN.
- Connect the NBX system to your local network.

To change the IP settings of the NBX system:

1 Use a category 5 Ethernet crossover cable to connect the computer's network interface card (NIC) directly to your NBX system Ethernet port.

By connecting the computer directly to the NBX system, you isolate the system from the network and eliminate the influence of routers and proxy servers.

- **2** Record the existing IP settings on the computer so you can restore them later.
- **3** Change the IP settings of your computer to:

| IP address: | 192.168.1.191 |
|------------------|---------------|
| Default gateway: | 0.0.0 |
| Subnet mask: | 255.255.255.0 |



CAUTION: Do not set your computer address to 192.168.1.192 because that IP address is used temporarily during system startup. If you use that address for your computer, a conflict results and the system might not start properly.

- **4** Reboot the computer so that the new settings take effect.
- **5** Start a browser.
- **6** To access the NBX NetSet utility, enter the following address into the browser's address field:

192.168.1.190

This is the default IP address of the NBX system.

If the connection attempt fails, check the browser's Proxy Server setting and verify that it is configured for a direct connection. Also, check the Connection setting and verify that it is set for a direct LAN connection, not a dial-up connection.

After you connect, you can log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the default administrator user name and password. See the next topic, <u>"Configuring the NBX System IP Address"</u> for instructions on configuring the NBX IP settings.



CAUTION: If you change the administrator password, you cannot retrieve (return) to the default, nor can you retrieve your new password if you forget it. If you make any password changes, record them in a safe place.

Table 15 describes possible network environments and the configuration needed to enable IP connectivity to the NBX system.

| Local IP Environment | NBX System Configuration |
|--|---|
| No IP networking currently in use | You do not need to change the IP settings in the NBX system, but you probably need to configure the IP settings in the computer that you use to communicate with the NBX NetSet utility. |
| | Set the computer's IP parameters to these settings: |
| | IP address: 192.168.1.191 |
| | Default gateway: 192.168.1.1 |
| | Subnet mask: 255.255.254 |
| | If you connect the LAN to the Internet in the future, your Internet service provider gives instructions on how to configure the IP settings of devices on the network. You must change the IP settings of the NBX system at that time. |
| | computer address to 192.168.1.19 2 because this IP address is used tartup. If you use that address for your computer, a conflict results and operly. |
| Private IP network, no subnets | You probably need to change the NBX system IP address to conform with the existing IP addressing scheme. |
| | You must change the NBX system IP address (192.168.1.190) if that address is already in use on the network or if you are using a different range of addresses. |
| Private IP network, with subnets | You probably need to change the NBX system IP address to conform with the existing address space. You must change the NBX system IP address (192.168.1.190) if that address is already in use on the network. |
| | You must change the NBX System subnet mask (255:255:255:0) if it does not conform to the network subnet scheme. |
| | You must change the NBX system default gateway from 0.0.0.0 to the IP address of the default gateway for the subnet where you install the NBX system. |
| Internet connectivity; addresses provided by the Internet Service Provider. | You must change the NBX system IP address, default gateway, and possibly the subnet mask. Ask the ISP to provide a fixed IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. You must have a fixed IP address for the NCP. |
| Internet connectivity; addresses provided from address block controlled by the client's organization. | You must change the NBX system IP address, default gateway, and possibly the subnet mask. Ask the local network administrator to provide a fixed IP address, (the NBX NCP does not support DHCP or BOOTP) a subnet mask, and a default gateway. |

Configuring the NBX
System IP AddressYou must change the default IP address of the NBX system and specify IP
settings appropriate for your LAN.

- 1 Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click System Configuration.
- **3** On the System Settings tab, click System-wide.
- **4** Edit the IP settings to conform to your LAN.
- **5** Click *Apply* and review your changes.
- 6 Click OK to close the dialog box.
- 7 Return to the Main Menu or to the Tab-To-It interface and click *Operations* > *Reboot/Shutdown*.
- 8 Click Reboot.

Be sure to restore your computer's original IP settings.

Establishing LAN After you establish IP connectivity, you are ready to install the LAN connections.

Establishing NBX V3000 LAN Connections

Connect the NBX V300 system to your LAN using the Ethernet port. This port can operate at 10 Mbps and 100 Mbps; it automatically senses the speed of your LAN. Check the NCP status lights to verify network connectivity:

For a description of NBX V3000 status lights, see Figure 1 on page 22.

Establishing NBX 100 LAN Connections

Connect the NBX 100 Call Processor to your network using either the BNC 10B2 connector (3C10110C only) or the 10BT UPLINK MDI-X port.

For a description of NBX 100 status lights, see Figure 4 on page 28.



The 10B2 connection and the Uplink port on the 3C1011C Call Processor are two different connection points for a single port. They cannot be used simultaneously.



If you use the Uplink connector, be sure to program the switch or router on the other end for 10 MB operation. You do not need to connect cards to each other within a chassis. They are connected by the chassis backplane.



Do not connect telephone lines or 3Com telephones yet.

Establishing SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 LAN Connections

Connect the SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor to your LAN using the Ethernet 1 port. The Ethernet 2 port is a fail-over port that is active only if the Ethernet 1 port experiences a link failure. This port can operate at 10 Mbps and 100 Mbps; it automatically senses the speed of your LAN.

Establishing SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis LAN Connections

Connect the NBX chassis to your LAN using one of these:

- The 10 Mbps shared connector Operates at 10 Mbps only
- The upper 10/100 Mbps connector Operates at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps and automatically senses the speed of your LAN
- The lower 10/100 Mbps RJ45 connector Operates at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps and automatically senses the speed of your LAN



The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis 3C10200B is an updated version of the 3C10200. The update removed the 10 Mbps shared connector and improved the switch-over performance of the Ethernet ports so that both ports have link prior to switch-over.

For a description of SuperStack 3 NBX status lights, see Figure 2 on page 24.

You do not need to connect cards to each other within an NBX chassis. They are connected by the chassis backplane.



Do not connect telephone lines or 3Com telephones yet.

Test Connectivity After the NBX system finishes its reboot operation and you have restored your computer's original IP settings, test connectivity to the NBX system.

- **1** Open a browser on your computer.
- **2** Type the IP address you assigned to the NBX system in the browser's address box, and then press Enter.

The NBX NetSet utility login screen should appear in your browser.

| Connecting Cards and Devices | After you configure and test the NBX system, you are ready to add cards into the optional chassis and attach optional devices such as Music On Hold. |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Connecting Analog Line Cards | You can install cards with the power on to the chassis. To connect and configure an NBX Analog Line Card: |
| 1 | Remove the blank faceplate from one of the slots. |
| 2 | Verify that the edges of the card ride in the chassis guide slots, and then slide the card in until you feel slight resistance. Press firmly on both sides of the front of the card until you feel it seat in the connector, and then tighten the two knurled knobs. |
| i> | If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions. |
| 3 | After you seat the card, wait at least 2 minutes for the card to initialize. |
| 4 | Use the NBX Auto Discover feature to configure the card. The Auto Discover feature finds each line card port and assigns extensions. For more information, see <u>"Using Auto Discover for Initial System</u> <u>Configuration"</u> on page 92. |
| i> | 3Com recommends that you install the cards in MAC address order. This practice makes it easier to diagnose and troubleshoot problems. |
| | Mapping Line Card Ports to Telephone Lines |
| | You can run the system using the default configuration, but to have complete control over telephone operations, you need to know which telephone line is assigned to which analog line port so that you can map CO telephone lines to telephones and manage lines for maximum performance. Use the NBX NetSet utility to quickly reassign extensions. |
| | When you connect the telephone lines, the order in which the telephone |

lines deliver calls matches the order of Line Card port extensions. For example, connect the line that rings first to the port with the lowest numbered extension, connect the next telephone line to next-lowest extension, and so forth. Extension numbers for Line Card ports are assigned based on the first unused extension number. Therefore, the extensions vary from system to system.

Line Card ports are labeled on the front panel. The first connector, labeled PFT (Power Fail Transfer), accepts a standard POTS (2500 touch-tone series compatible) telephone. If there is a power failure, this port

continues to provide dial tone and telephone service. Do *not* count this port as a line port.

Connecting Digital Line Cards

You can install cards with the power on to the chassis. To connect and configure the digital line cards:

- **1** Remove one of the blank faceplates from the chassis.
- 2 Install the card securely.

Verify that the edges of the card ride in the chassis guide slots, and then slide the card in until you feel slight resistance. Press firmly on both sides of the front of the card until you feel it seat in the connector, and then tighten the two knurled knobs.



If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions and alignment problems.

- **3** Wait at least 3 minutes for the card to initialize.
- **4** Use the Auto Discover feature to configure the digital line card. The Auto Discover feature finds each port on each digital line card and assigns port extensions.



Use the Auto Discover feature to configure telephones and analog line cards before you enable Auto Discover for digital line cards. For more information about the Auto Discover feature, see <u>"Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration"</u> on page 92.

Connecting Analog Terminal Cards

You can install cards with the power on to the chassis. To connect and configure analog terminal cards:

- 1 Remove one of the blank faceplates from the chassis.
- **2** Install the analog terminal card securely.

Verify that the edges of the card ride in the chassis guide slots, and then slide the card in until you feel slight resistance. Press firmly on both sides of the front of the card until you feel that it is seated in the connector, and then tighten the knurled knobs.



If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions.

- **3** Wait at least 2 minutes for the card to initialize.
- 4 Use the Auto Discover feature to configure the analog terminal card. For more information about the Auto Discover feature, see <u>"Using</u> <u>Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration</u>" on page 92.

The Auto Discover process finds each port on each Analog Terminal Card and assigns port extensions.

Connecting an Analog Terminal Adapter

If you are installing one or more Analog Terminal Adapters (ATA), install them after installing chassis cards.

To install an ATA:

1 Connect the analog telephone or fax machine to the analog port on the ATA. The analog port on a 3C10120B ATA has a picture of an analog telephone beside it. See Figure 23. The analog port on a 3C10400 ATA is labeled POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service). See Figure 24.



The Analog Terminal Adapter may require a telephone connector for use outside North America. Contact your supplier for more information on country-specific requirements.

2 Connect the Ethernet port on the ATA to the LAN. The Ethernet port on a 3C10120B ATA is the connector on the far left side. On the 3C10400 ATA, the Ethernet port is labeled LAN.

Figure 23 3C10120B ATA Connectors



Figure 24 3C10400 ATA Connectors



- **3** You can optionally connect a PC (or other Ethernet device) to the Ethernet port on the ATA. The 3C10120B Ethernet port has a picture of an NBX telephone beside it. The Ethernet port on the 3C10400 ATA is labeled PC.
- **4** Connect the AC power adapter to the AC power connector on the ATA. If you are using a powered Ethernet cable instead of the AC adapter, see <u>"Using Power over Ethernet with an ATA"</u> next.

- **5** Plug the AC power adapter into a wall outlet.
- 6 Use the Auto Discover feature to configure the ATA. For more information about Auto Discover, see <u>"Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration"</u> on page 92.
- **7** If the ATA is connected to a fax machine, configure the port for fax usage:
 - **a** Open the NBX NetSet utility and go to *Device Configuration > ATA*.
 - **b** Select the ATA from the list and click *Modify*.
 - c Enable the check box labeled *Fax Machine*, then click *Apply*.



Configuring an ATA port for fax operation optimizes the performance for inbound and outbound faxes. If you make a voice call using the ATA device (for example, if you use the telephone portion of the fax machine), the quality of the audio may be affected. If you make a VTL call using the ATA device, the audio may be unusable. If you configure the port for fax operation, expect lower quality voice calls on that port. If you configure the port for voice calls, the performance is not optimized for faxes.

Using Power over Ethernet with an ATA

The 3C10120B requires the use of a splitter device to accept Power over Ethernet (PoE).

The 3C10400 ATA can accept power over the Ethernet cable. It meets the IEEE 802.3af standard for Power over Ethernet. See <u>Table 16</u> for power connection instructions. The 3C10400 ATA is a Class 3 PoE device.

The 3C10400 ATA can also accept power from an AC power adapter plugged into a wall socket. If you supply power to the ATA using an AC power adapter and then also supply power on the Ethernet cable, the ATA uses the Ethernet power source. If you supply power to the ATA over the Ethernet cable and then also connect the AC power adapter, the ATA continues to use the Ethernet cable power source. If you connect both power sources to the ATA and later remove the Ethernet cable, the ATA switches to use the AC power adapter.

| Power Source | NBX ATA Model | Connection Details |
|---|---------------------|--|
| AC power adapter | 3C10400 3C10120B | Any NBX ATA can accept power from an AC power adapter. Use the power adapter that comes with your ATA. On all NBX devices, the power connector is labeled with the DC power symbol: |
| Power over Ethernet | 3C10400 | Connect the powered Ethernet cable directly to the telephone's Ethernet connector. No separate power connection is required. |
| (IEEE 802.3af) power source | 3C10120B | Devices that predate the 802.3af standard can be powered by an 802.3af-compliant power supply with the use of the 3Com Network Jack to NBX Phone Power Module (3CNJVOIPMOD-NBX), which is 802.3af-compliant. The module removes power from a powered Ethernet cable and splits it into a power jack and an unpowered Ethernet connection that you connect to the ATA's LAN port and power connection. |
| 3Com Ethernet Power Source: | 3C10400 3C10120B | The 3Com Ethernet Power Source predates the 802.3af standard. Any NBX device can be powered by a 3Com Ethernet Power Source if you use and NBX Power Splitter (3C10223 – package of 12). The NBX Power Splitter removes power from a powered Ethernet cable and splits it into a power jack and an unpowered Ethernet connection that you connect to the ATA's LAN port and power connection. |
| 3C10220 (12-port) | | |
| ■ 3C10222 (24-port) | | |

 Table 16
 Connecting Power to an NBX Analog Terminal Adapter

Selecting Regional Software and Components

After you complete the hardware installation, you can download your preferred regional language software and components.



U.S. English is installed by default and cannot be removed. It is used as a fallback in case another Regional Software Pack fails to load properly.

The Regional Software Packs include:

with the 3Com Ethernet Power Source (3C10220, 12-port, or 3C10222, 24-port).

- Localized voice prompts heard by callers, telephone users, and administrators. These are messages that users or administrators are not able to change by recording a new message, for example, prompts used for setting up Auto Attendants and voice mailboxes.
- Default prompts for configurable voice messages. Users and administrators can record these messages and substitute their recorded messages for the default versions.

- Tones and cadences
- Localized User Help for the NBX NetSet utility
- Localized NBX Telephone Guides and Quick Reference Guides, which are accessed from the NBX NetSet utility and the *Resource Pack CD*

Installing Regional Software and Components

When you access the NBX NetSet utility for the first time, you can select and download the regional language software and components.

1 Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password and then click *Operations* > *Regional Software*.

For a description of the status values for each listed region see <u>Table 17</u>.

- 2 Select Install. The Install Regional Software dialog box appears.
- **3** Either browse to the *install* folder on the *NBX Resource Pack CD* and select the language (.taz file) that you want, or type the path in the text box.
- 4 Click Upgrade.



After you install the regional software and components, you must enable the language. That is, you must make your preferred language the current language on the NBX system. For more information, see the NBX Administrator's Guide, or use the NBX NetSet utility to go to System Configuration > System Settings > Regional Settings and then click Help.

 Table 17
 NBX NetSet Regional Software Tab – Status Values

| Status | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| In Use | All of the components associated with the language and country are installed and at least one (voice prompts, tones and cadences, or documentation) has been selected for use. |
| Available for Use | All of the components associated with the language and country are installed, but none of them are currently selected for use. |
| Not Fully Installed | One or more of the components associated with the language and country are either not installed, or the wrong version of at least one component is installed. |
| Error while Loading | One or more of the files associated with a component are missing. This situation should never occur. |

Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration

Using the Auto Discover feature simplifies initial system configuration by adding information about new devices to the configuration database. "Devices" include telephones, Analog Line Card ports, Digital Line Card channels, Analog Terminal Adapter ports, 3Com Attendant Consoles, and "virtual devices" such as the pcXset Soft Telephone and the ConneXtions H.323 Gateway.



Before you use the Auto Discover process to configure telephones and attendant consoles, you should review the procedures in <u>"Telephones and Attendant Consoles"</u> in <u>Chapter 3</u>.



After a device has been discovered, the Auto Discover process does not find that device again. To remove a device from the system, you must use the NBX NetSet utility to manually remove the device and its database record.



Licensed devices will not be discovered until after you have entered the appropriate Group License to the system. For more information on Group Licensing, see <u>"Device Licenses</u>" on page 52.

Table 18 summarizes Auto Discover actions for NBX system components.

| Table 18 | Auto Discover Actions on NBX System Components | |
|----------|--|--|
|----------|--|--|

| Component | Auto Discover Action | |
|---|--|--|
| NBX Analog Line Card and NBX V3000 analog line ports | Gathers configuration information from each port on the card, assigns a default extension, and enters the information into the configuration database. | |
| NBX Digital Line Card | Gathers configuration information from the card, assigns a default extension, and enters the information into the configuration database. | |
| | After you Auto Discover the Digital Line Card, you may need to edit the Dial Plan to configure Direct Inward Dial (DID) numbers. | |
| Telephones | Gathers configuration information from the telephone, assigns a default User Profile | |
| Analog Terminal Cards | labeled "new user," assigns the next lowest available extension number to the profile, and enters the information into the configuration database. | |
| Analog Terminal Adapters | Auto Discover Telephones finds both Analog Terminal Cards and Analog Terminal Adapters. | |
| NBX V3000 ATA port | | |
| | By default, the Auto Discover process assigns extension number 1000 (4-digit Dial Plan) or 100 (3-digit Dial Plan) as the first telephone extension. You can use the NBX NetSet utility to specify a new extension starting number. To simplify Auto Attendant configuration, you should start a range at a base number, for example, 1000/100, 2000/200, 3000/300, or 4000/400. The default Auto Attendant assumes that extension 1000 (4-digit dial plan) or 100 (3-digit dial plan) is the extension of a human attendant (receptionist). | |

| Component | Auto Discover Action | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|--|
| 3Com Attendant Console | Finds and configures any installed 3Com Attendant Consoles. The first 100 existing telephones, except for the extension that is associated with the Attendant Console, are mapped to Attendant Console buttons. The lowest extension is automatically associated with the Attendant Console. Typically, you would wait until you have installed all your telephones before you enable Auto Discover Attendant Consoles. | | |
| pcXset Soft Telephone | Enables the Auto Discover feature on installations of the pcXset PC Telephone Client when the following conditions are true: | | |
| | The pcXset PC Soft Telephone program is running on the host PC. | | |
| | The pcXset PC Soft Telephone host computer is connected to the network. | | |
| | You have entered the proper license key into the NBX NetSet utility. | | |
| ConneXtions H.323 Gateway | Configures line card port settings when the following conditions are true: | | |
| | The ConneXtions H.323 Gateway program is running. | | |
| | The ConneXtions H.323 Gateway host computer is connected to the network. | | |
| | You have entered the proper license key into the NBX NetSet utility. | | |
| | Refore you use the Auto Discover process to configure telephones and | | |

Table 18 Auto Discover Actions on NBX System Components (continued)



Before you use the Auto Discover process to configure telephones and attendant consoles, you should review the procedures in <u>Chapter 3</u>, <u>Telephones and Attendant Consoles</u>.

Initial System Configuration

To use the Auto Discover feature for initial system configuration:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click System Configuration.
- **3** In the System Configuration dialog box, click the System Settings tab.
- 4 Click System-wide. The System Settings dialog box appears (Figure 25).

| System Configuration | - System Settings | | | | | × |
|------------------------|-------------------|----|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------|--------|
| | | | | | | |
| Host Name: | SuperStack3 | | Auto Discover Te | elephones | | |
| SMTP Domain Name: | | | Auto Add Pł | nones to Call | Pickup G | roup O |
| IP Address: | 10.230.55.5 | | Auto Discover Li | ne Cards | | |
| Default Gateway: | 10.230.55.1 | | Auto Discover D | - - | | |
| Subnet Mask: | 255.255.255.0 | | Auto Discover A | | oles | |
| Primary DNS: | | | Handsfree on Tra Handsfree on Ex | | ar | |
| Secondary DNS: | | | VLAN Enabled | | ,1 | |
| Tertiary DNS: | | | VLAN ID: | Not Applicat | ole | |
| Network Protocol: | IP-on-the-fly | | IP VLAN Tag | gging Enabled | ł | |
| Extensions Start at: | 1000 | | System-wide CL | .IR | | |
| External Prefix: | 9 | | Music on Hold | | | |
| Caller ID Wait Timer: | 6 | | Music on Transf | er | | |
| External Paging Delay: | Long Delay | | One Button Tran | Isfer | | |
| | | | NBX Messaging | | | |
| | | | Third-Party Mes | saging | | |
| | | | Pulse Dialing Call Timer | | | |
| 020 | | | | | | |
| 3COM | | ок | Cancel | Apply | Help | |

Figure 25 System Settings Dialog Box

5 Select the check box for the device you are configuring. 3Com recommends that you Auto Discover one device type at a time. <u>Table 19</u> describes each choice.

| Table 19 Auto Discover Check Boxe | es |
|---|----|
|---|----|

| Check Box | Action |
|--------------------------|---|
| Auto Discover Telephones | Discovers 3Com telephones, Analog Terminal Cards, the ATA port on the NBX V3000, and Analog Terminal Adaptors. |
| | Auto Add Phones to Call Pickup Group 0 |
| | Members of a Call Pickup Group can answer calls that ring on other group members' telephones. The default system includes one Call Pickup Group. Whether or not you select this check box, you can later change the call pickup group for any telephone. See the <i>NBX</i> <i>Administrator's Guide</i> for information about Call Pickup Groups. |

| Check Box | Action |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Auto Discover Line Cards | Discovers Analog Line Cards, Legacy Link Card ports, and analog line ports on the NBX V3000. |
| Auto Discover Digital Line Cards | Discovers Digital Line Cards (BRI-ST, E1, and T1). |
| Auto Discover Attendant Consoles | Discovers Attendant Consoles. Do not discover Attendant Consoles until after you have discovered telephones. Part of the Auto Discover process is to associate the lowest extension with the Attendant Console and the to map the next 100 extensions to the buttons on the Attendant Console. |

 Table 19
 Auto Discover Check Boxes

6 Click Apply.

Auto Discover Usage Notes

- It takes a few moments for the Auto Discover process and the software download process to complete. The NCP initializes devices one at a time. If you have connected many new devices to the system at the same time, the Auto Discover process requires more time.
- A fully initialized telephone displays its extension and the date and time. If there are no extensions available, the Auto Discover process fails, and the telephone's display panel continues to display the telephone's MAC address.
- If you are adding devices that do not have a display panel, such as 3100 Entry Telephones, connect the devices one at a time and then refresh the *Device Configuration* > *Telephones* list after you connect a device to see the extension assigned to that device.
- If you are installing a 3Com Attendant Console, connect it after you have discovered all of the telephones. The Auto Discover Attendant Consoles process maps all existing telephone extension to the Attendant Console.
- If you are adding licensed devices to the system, the devices will not be discovered until you add the appropriate Group License to the system. For more information on Group Licensing, see <u>"Device</u> <u>Licenses</u>" on page 52.

Disabling the Auto Discover Feature After you finish the Auto Discover process for the initial configuration, you can disable it so that the NCP does not continue to search for added devices.

To disable the Auto Discover feature:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- **2** In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click System Configuration.
- 3 Click System-wide.
- 4 Clear all Auto Discover check boxes.
- **5** Click Apply.
- 6 Click OK to close the dialog box.

NBX System You can configure the NBX system to behave in one of the three traditional telephone system modes:

Key mode – CO lines map to buttons on users' telephones

To configure key mode behavior using the NBX NetSet utility, use Button Mappings and the Auto Extension setting for each line card port. Button Mappings enable you to map a line card port extension to a specific Access button on a 3Com telephone. Button Mappings identify the telephones that ring when a call comes in on the mapped CO line. Auto Extension specifies the destination of a call that is not answered at any of the telephones.

PBX mode – CO lines are pooled and arbitrated by the NCP

The CO lines do not map to individual telephones. All incoming calls go first to a receptionist's telephone or the Automated Attendant. If the call goes to a receptionist's telephone, the receptionist forwards the call to the user's extension, or if the user is out of the office, the call can be sent directly to the user's voice mailbox. To call an outside number, a user must dial the line pool access number, typically 9, and the NCP assigns the next available line. PBX mode allows you to make maximum use of a limited number of CO lines.



Direct Inward Dialing (DID) configuration requires changes to the system dial plan. For more information on DID, see the NBX Administrator's Guide.

Hybrid mode – Combines key mode and PBX mode

Some CO lines are mapped directly to telephones, while the rest are pooled.

PBX mode is the easiest configuration to set up and manage. Key mode requires more configuration because you must map the CO lines to telephones.

Reassigning For this procedure, you need the list of line card port MAC addresses that were created when you installed the line cards.

Setting Line Card Port Options To reassign extensions and a

- To reassign extensions and set line card port options:
- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- **3** Click the *Line Card Ports* tab.
- **4** Select the port with the lowest extension.
- 5 Click *Modify*. The Modify Line Card Port dialog box appears.
- **6** Edit the line card port fields as needed. The the Help for information about each field.
- 7 After you have made all of your changes for the current Line Card port, click *Apply* to enable the changes and review them.
- 8 Click OK to exit the dialog box and return to the Line Card Ports tab.
- **9** Repeat this procedure for each line card port.

Example:

During the Auto Discover process, the NBX system may assign extensions to Line Card ports as shown in <u>Table 20</u>.

 Table 20
 Examples of Line Card Addresses

| Analog Line Card (3C10114) | | Analog Line Card (3C10114C) | | |
|----------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|-----------|--|
| MAC Address | Extension | MAC Address | Extension | |
| 00:e0:bb:03:8d:c8 | 7260 | 00:e0:bb:03:8d:cc(1) | 7260 | |
| 00:e0:bb:03:8d:c9 | 7261 | 00:e0:bb:03:8d:cc(2) | 7261 | |
| 00:e0:bb:03:8d:ca | 7259 | 00:e0:bb:03:8d:cc(3) | 7259 | |
| 00:e0:bb:03:8d:cb | 7258 | 00:e0:bb:03:8d:cc(4) | 7258 | |

Typically, you want to have the lowest extension number associated with the first port, the next highest extension number associated with the second port, and so on.

To reassign the extension numbers:

- **1** Record the extensions and either the MAC addresses or port numbers for the four Line Card ports.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Reports.
- **3** Click the *Device List* tab.
- **4** Review the extensions in the scroll list to find the highest extension number that has been assigned. Add one to that extension and record it. For example, if the highest assigned extension number is 7268, you record 7269.
- **5** Return to the *Line Cards* tab.
- **6** From the four Line Card ports you recorded, select the port with highest MAC address or port number and click *Modify*.
- 7 In the Modify Line Card Port dialog box, change the extension number (7258 in this example) to the extension number you recorded when you were viewing the Device List tab (7269).
- 8 Click *OK*. The Line Card Ports tab reappears showing the new extension number. Extension 7258 is now unused.
- **9** From the four Line Card Ports you recorded, select the port to which you want to assign the unused extension. In the example, 7258 is the lowest extension number of the four, so select the port with the lowest MAC address or port number and click *Modify*.
- **10** Change the extension number and click OK.

Repeat steps 9 and 10. Each time that you assign an extension, the previous extension is no longer used, and you can assign it to the appropriate port. When you are finished:

- The four original extensions (7258 through 7261) are assigned to the line card ports in the same order as the MAC addresses or port numbers.
- The unused extension (7269) is again unused.

| Connecting Telephone Lines | After you have installed and configured the system for initial startup, connect the telephone company lines to the analog line ports so that yo can start receiving outside calls. | |
|---|--|--|
| Adding External Hardware | External devices connect to the front of the NBX system. See <u>"What</u> External Devices Can Connect to an NBX System?" on page 64. | |
| Connecting a Music-on-Hold (MOH) Input Device | Use a patch cord with phono-type connectors (stereo or mono) to connect line level audio from any audio device that has a line-out jack to the MOH jack on the front of the NCP. The audio input should be max 2V peak to peak. | |
| | Adjusting Music-on-Hold (MOH) Volume | |
| | The NBX 100 and SuperStack 3 NBX have an external control for adjusting the MOH volume. For an NBX V3000 system, use the volume control on the external MOH device. | |
| | To adjust the volume of music on hold on an NBX 100 or SuperStack 3 NBX: | |
| 1 | Use a nonferrous (plastic or aluminum) adjustment tool to adjust the volume control on the front of the Call Processor to about mid-range. | |
| 2 | Use a 3Com Telephone to call another extension, and have the person put you on hold. | |
| 3 | While listening to the music, adjust the volume control on the music-on-hold input device. | |
| Connecting a Paging Amplifier | Connect the paging device to the paging connector on the front of the NCP. See the documentation for your paging amplifier for information about that device. For information about how to page from a telephone on the NBX system, see "Paging" in the <i>NBX Telephone Guide</i> . | |
| | The paging connector on the NCP is an RJ-11 connector. It is a line-out, 600 ohm audio interface with a dry contact closure for use with an external paging amplifier (<u>Table 21</u>). | |
| | Table 21 Paging Amplifier Connector | |
| | Pin 1 Not connected | |

Pin 2 Relay common

| | raging Ampiner Connector | |
|-------|--------------------------|--|
| Pin 3 | Ring | |
| Pin 4 | Тір | |
| Pin 5 | Relay contact | |
| Pin 6 | Not connected | |

 Table 21
 Paging Amplifier Connector

Configuring Routing Devices

If you have a low-bandwidth device on the LAN, such as an ISDN router, you must update the device's routing table to filter NBX system multicast addresses. The NBX system uses Ethernet multicast addresses to implement some system features.

If you have telephones connected to the network through a low-bandwidth link, such as an ISDN connection, you can configure them so that they do not generate multicast traffic (<u>Table 22</u>). For more information, see the *NBX Administrator's Guide*. You must still filter multicasts to ensure that multicasts generated by other NBX devices are not propagated through the low-bandwidth link.

| Multicast Address | Description |
|--|--|
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:1d | System state |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:15 | Music on hold |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:11 | Page |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:25 01:e0:bb:00:00:35 01:e0:bb:00:00:31 01:e0:bb:00:00:39 | Conference call channel 0 Conference call channel 1 Conference call channel 2 Conference call channel 3 |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:09 | Download service |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:01 01:e0:bb:00:00:05 01:e0:bb:00:00:0d | Paging audio 1 Paging audio 2 Paging audio 3 |
| 01:e0:bb:00:00:3d 01:e0:bb:00:00:30 01:e0:bb:00:00:34 01:e0:bb:00:00:3c 01:e0:bb:00:00:38 01:e0:bb:00:00:28 01:e0:bb:00:00:2c 01:e0:bb:00:00:24 | Conference 4 Conference 5 Conference 6 Conference 7 Conference 8 Conference 9 Conference 10 Conference 11 |

 Table 22
 Layer 2
 Multicast Addresses

102 CHAPTER 2: INSTALLING SYSTEM HARDWARE COMPONENTS

3

TELEPHONES AND ATTENDANT CONSOLES

This chapter explains how to install:

- 3Com Telephones
- 3Com Attendant Consoles



WARNING: 3Com Telephones are intended for connection only on internal Local Area Networks. Do not install them outside of buildings.

| Adding Telephones | There are two ways to add a new telephone: Auto Discover, and manual configuration. |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Auto Discover Telephones | Auto Discover is the simplest and most common method of adding a new telephone. When you enable the Auto Discover feature and then connect a new 3Com Telephone to the LAN, the telephone receives the next lowest available extension and a default set of properties. You can then move the telephone to another location on the LAN and it retains its extension number. For instructions on connecting a telephone to the LAN, see <u>"Connecting the Telephone to the LAN"</u> on page 109. |
| | It is good installation practice to add telephones one at a time, label each with the extension number assigned by the Auto Discover process, and then disconnect them. Extensions are assigned in sequence starting with extension 1000 on a four-digit dial plan and extension 100 on a three-digit dial plan. You can see the extension associated with the new telephone on the telephone's display panel (except for the 3100 Entry Telephone). You can see and change the extension number in the Device Configuration > Telephones tab of the NBX NetSet utility. You can use the telephone's MAC address to match a physical telephone with an entry in the NBX NetSet utility Telephones tab. Each telephone has its MAC address printed on a label on the bottom of the phone. You can then define the user profiles for each telephone (User Configuration > Users) and place the telephones in the correct locations. |

Auto Discover Notes

- If you are using IP as your network protocol, see also <u>"Configuring IP</u> <u>Telephony"</u> on <u>page 151</u>.
- You should connect the telephone to the network segment on which the NCP resides. You may configure a telephone on a subnet that is remote to the NCP, but to do so you must first configure the network information in the telephone using an option on your DHCP server, the Telephone Local User Interface utility (LUI), or the 3Com Telephone Local Configuration Application (TLC). These options are described in the NBX Administrator's Guide.
- You must enable the Auto Discover Telephones feature before you connect the telephone.



If you are adding licensed devices, you must first add the license key into the NBX NetSet utility.

Adding a New Telephone Using the Auto Discover Feature

Before you enable the Auto Discover feature, be sure that you have the dial plan you want installed. To Auto Discover a telephone:

1 In *NBX NetSet - Main Menu* window, (Figure 26), click *System Configuration*. The System Configuration window appears.



Figure 26 NBX NetSet - Main Menu Window

2 Click the *System-wide* button. The System-wide dialog box (Figure 27) appears.

For detailed information on each item in the System Settings dialog, click the Help button.

| Host Name: | SuperStack3 | | Auto Discover Te | lephones | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-----|--|----------------|-----------|--------|
| SMTP Domain Name: | | 7 | | iones to Call | Pickup Gi | roup O |
| IP Address: | 10.230.55.5 | | Auto Discover Li | ne Cards | | |
| Default Gateway: | 10.230.55.1 | | Auto Discover Di | gital Line Car | ds | |
| Subnet Mask: Primary DNS: | 255.255.255.0 | | Auto Discover At Handsfree on Tra | insfer | | |
| Secondary DNS: | | | Handsfree on Ex VLAN Enabled | ternal Transfe | r | |
| Tertiary DNS: | |] | VLAN ID: | Not Applicat | ole | |
| Network Protocol: | IP-on-the-fly 💌 | | 🔲 IP VLAN Tag | ging Enabled | I | |
| Extensions Start at: | 1000 | | System-wide CL | IR | | |
| External Prefix: | 9 | | Music on Hold | | | |
| Caller ID Wait Timer: | 6 | j 🗌 | Music on Transfe | | | |
| External Paging Delay: | Long Delay 💌 | | One Button Tran NBX Messaging Third-Party Mess | | | |
| 0-01 | | | Pulse Dialing Call Timer | | | |
| 3COM | | ок | Cancel | Apply | Help | |

Figure 27 System Settings - System-wide Dialog Box

- **3** Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover.
- 4 Enable the Auto Discover Telephones check box.
- **5** Optionally, enable the *Auto Add Phones to Call Pickup Group 0* check box.

Members of a Call Pickup Group can answer calls that ring on other group members' telephones. The default system includes one Call Pickup Group. Whether or not you select this check box, you can later change the call pickup group for any telephone. See the *NBX Administrator's Guide* for information about Call Pickup Groups.

6 Click OK.

- 7 For each telephone that you want to Auto Discover:
 - **a** Remove the telephone from the packing box.
 - **b** Connect power to the telephone as described on <u>page 107</u> or on the packing sheet that comes with the telephone.
 - **c** Connect the telephone to the LAN on which the NCP resides as described on page 109 or on the packing sheet that comes with the telephone.
 - **d** Wait until the telephone display panel displays an extension number. If you are configuring a device that does not have a display panel, such as a 3100 Entry Telephone, you should display the *Device Configuration* > *Telephones* tab in the NBX NetSet utility. After the system discovers the telephone and you refresh the *Telephones* tab, The new device appears as the highest extension.
 - e Record the extension number on the telephone's shipping box. If you are configuring a 3100 Entry Telephone, you can use the NBX LabelMaker utility, *Downloads > LabelMaker*, to create a label that shows the telephone's extension and then place the label in its holder underneath the handset.
 - **f** Disconnect the telephone from the LAN.
 - **g** Disconnect power from the telephone.

Once you have discovered a telephone, it retains its settings. The telephone can now be placed in the appropriate location based on the telephone extension assignments the customer has chosen.

8 When you connect the telephone to the LAN and power, the extension appears on the display panel.



If the telephone will be located on a different subnet from the NCP, you must configure the network to provide the proper IP information to the telephone. See <u>Chapter 9</u>, <u>"Configuring IP Telephony"</u> on <u>page 151</u> for more information.

Manually Configure Telephones

You can add telephones to the system manually using the NBX NetSet utility. However, if you have many telephones to configure, manual configuration can be a tedious and error-prone process. For information about adding telephones manually, see the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.

Manual Configuration Notes

Typically, you must connect the telephone to the network segment on which the NCP resides to enable the NCP to communicate with the telephone. You can manually define a telephone's ability to communicate with its NCP by using the Telephone Local User Interface utility (LUI) or the 3Com Telephone Local Configuration application (TLC). The LUI utility resides on each 3Com telephone. You can install the TLC application to your PC from the NBX Resource Pack CD. For details about these tools, see Chapter 10, "Troubleshooting" of the NBX Administrator's Guide.

Connecting Power to
the TelephoneAll 3Com telephones can accept power from an AC converter, however,
the power converter is an optional component on 3Com 3100-series
telephones because these devices are compliant with the IEEE 802.3af
Power over Ethernet (PoE) standard.

To eliminate the power converter, you can connect your 3Com Telephone to a powered Ethernet cable. NBX devices can use Ethernet power directly or through the use of a splitter device. The method you use to connect an NBX device to a powered Ethernet cable depends on the type of Ethernet power in use at your facility and the type of NBX device you are connecting. See <u>Table 23</u> for power connection details.

| Power | 3Com Telephone | Connection Details | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| AC power Any 3Com Telephone car adapter accept power from a pow | | Connect the AC adapter's power jack to the connector on the bottom of the phone. | | |
| (commonly adapter. On all NBX devices, known as a the power connector is power brick') marked by the DC power symbol: | A strain relief tab is molded into the bottom of 1102, 2102, and 2101 phones. A strain relief clamp is molded into the adjustable stand on 3100-series devices. | | | |
| | | If you need an AC adapter, order the optional power adapter 3C10444-XX, where XX is the country code: | | |
| | | AA (Australia/New Zealand) SA (South Africa) | | |
| | | CN (China) UK (United Kingdom) | | |
| | | ME (Europe/LAT) US (North America) | | |
| | | NOTE: If you use a power brick on a 3103 Manager's Telephone, you <i>must</i> use the 3C10444-XX power brick. All other 3Com devices can use either 3C10444-XX or the older power brick, 3C10224-XX. | | |

| Table 23 | Connecting | Power to | a 3Com | Telephone |
|----------|------------|----------|--------|------------|
| | connecting | | u scom | receptione |

 Table 23
 Connecting Power to a 3Com Telephone (continued)

| Power | 3Com Telephone | Connection Details | | |
|--|--|---|--|--|
| Power over Ethernet (IEEE 802.3af standard) power source | 3Com Manager's Telephone: | The part number appears in the label on the bottom of the telephone. | | |
| | 3C10403A (3103) | | | |
| | 3Com Business Telephones: | Connect the powered Ethernet cable directly to the telephone's Ethernet connector. | | |
| | 3C10281PE (1102) 3C10226PE (2102) 3C10228IRPE (2102) 3C10402A (3102) | All 3Com telephones identify the Ethernet connection with this icon: | | |
| | | | | |
| | 3Com Basic Telephone: | | | |
| | 3C10410A (3101) 3C10410SPKRA (3101) 3C10248PE (2101) | No separate power connection is required. However, if you connect both an AC adapter and a powered Ethernet cable, the device uses the power from the AC adapter and switches automatically to Ethernet power if you remove the adapter. | | |
| | 3Com Entry Telephone: | | | |
| | 3C10399A (3100) | | | |
| | 3Com Business Telephones: | 2 3Com Telephones | | |
| | 3C10121 (1102) 3C10122(1102) 3C101226A (2102) 3C101226B (2102) 3C10228IRA (2102) 3C10228IRB (2102) 3C10281B (2102) | 1 that predate the IEEE 802.3af standard can be powered by an 802.3af-compliant power supply with the use of the 3Com Network Jack to NBX Phone Power Module (3CNJVOIPMOD-NBX). The module 1 | | |
| | 3Com Basic Telephone: | receives power from an Ethernet cable 2 and splits it into an | | |
| | 3C10248B (2101) | unpowered Ethernet 3 connection and a power jack 4 . | | |
| Power | 3Com Telephone | Connection Details | | |
|--|--|---------------------------|--|--|
| Power 3Com Ethernet Power Source: • 3C10220 (12-port) • 3C10222 (24-port) | 3Com Business Telephones: 3C10121 (2102) 3C10122 (2102) 3C101226A (2102) 3C101226B (2102) 3C10228IRA (2102) 3C10228IRB (2102) 3C10281B (2102) 3C10281PE (2102) | | The 3Com Ethernet Power Source predates the IEEE 802.3af standard. 3Com Telephones that are 802.3af-compliant can be powered by a 3Com Ethernet Power Source if you use an NBX Power Splitter (3C10223 – package of 12). The NBX Power Splitter 1 removes power from a powered Ethernet cable 2 . | |
| | 3C10226PE (2102) 3C10228IRPE (2102) 3C10402A (3102) 3Com Basic Telephones: | | 2101 Basic Telephone | |
| | 3C10410A (3101) 3C10410SPKRA (3101SP) 3C10248B (2101) 3C10248PE (2101) | | 3103 Manager's Telephone | |
| | 3Com Entry Telephone: | | 3102 Business Telephone (shown) | |
| | 3C10399A (3100) | | 3101 and 3102 SP Basic Telephones 3100 Entry Telephone | |

 Table 23
 Connecting Power to a 3Com Telephone (continued)

CAUTION: You can damage an NBX device by using an NBX power splitter (3C10223) with the 3Com Network Jack Power over Ethernet Multiport Midspan Solution (3CNJPSE24). Use the NBX power splitter (3C10223) only with the 3Com Ethernet Power Source (3C10220, 12-port, or 3C10222, 24-port).

Connecting the Telephone to the LAN

To connect the telephone:

- 1 Connect a Category 5 Ethernet cable to an available hub port or wall jack that is connected to the same subnet as the NCP.
- **2** Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to the LAN connector on the underside of the telephone.



Figure 28 Connections for 3Com 3102 Business Telephone (shown) and 3103 Manager's Telephone

- 1 Power cable. Ask your Administrator how you should power your phone. Then see <u>Table 23</u> for instructions on how to connect your telephone to power. <u>Figure 30</u> shows a connection using an optional AC adapter.
- 2 Ethernet cable (to data jack)
- **3** Ethernet cable (optional; to connect a computer or an Attendant Console to the network)
- 4 Handset cord (to handset)
- **5** Headset connection (to connect an optional headset)

Figure 29 Connections for 3Com 1102 Business Telephone



- 1 Ethernet cable (optional; to connect a computer or an Attendant Console to the network)
- 2 Strain-relief tab to prevent power cord from becoming disconnected
- **3** Power cable. Ask your Administrator how you should power your phone. Then see <u>Table 23</u> for instructions on how to connect your telephone to power. <u>Figure 30</u> shows a connection using an AC adapter.
- 4 Handset cord (to handset)
- **5** Ethernet cable (to data jack)



Figure 30 Connections for 3Com 2102 Business Telephone

- 1 Power cable. Ask your Administrator how you should power your phone. Then see <u>Table 23</u> for instructions on how to connect your telephone to power. (Figure 30 shows a connection using an AC adapter.)
- 2 Strain-relief tab to prevent power from becoming disconnected
- **3** Ethernet cable (optional; to connect a computer or an Attendant Console to the network)
- 4 Handset cord (to handset)
- **5** Ethernet cable (to data jack)

Figure 31 Connections for 3Com 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephones (shown) and 3100 Entry Telephone



- 1 Power cable. Ask your Administrator how you should power your phone. Then see <u>Table 23</u> for instructions on how to connect your telephone to power. (Figure 31 shows a connection using an optional AC adapter.)
- 2 Ethernet cable (to data jack)
- **3** Ethernet cable (optional; to connect a computer or an Attendant Console to the network)
- 4 Handset cord (to handset)



Figure 32 Connections for 3Com 2101 Basic Telephones

- 1 Ethernet cable (optional; to connect a computer or an Attendant Console to the network)
- 2 Ethernet cable (to data jack)
- **3** Power cable. Ask your Administrator how you should power your phone. Then see <u>Table 23</u> for instructions on how to connect your telephone to power. (Figure 32 shows a connection using an optional AC adapter.)
- 4 Handset cord (to handset)

Using the Telephone's Switch Port

Many 3Com telephones contain a two-port Ethernet switch with connectors on the underside of the phone. One port is used to connect the telephone to the LAN and the other port connects a computer or other Ethernet device to the LAN.

To connect a computer to the switch port on the telephone:

- Use a Category 5 UTP cable with RJ-45 connectors.
- Connect one end of the Category 5 cable to the computer's Ethernet network interface card (NIC).
- Connect the other end of the cable to the Ethernet switch port on the underside of the telephone.

The Ethernet port is labeled with this icon: \square

 Do not use the telephone's Ethernet port to connect another 3Com telephone to the system. **3Com Cordless Telephones** Connection details for the 3106C and 3107C Cordless Telephones are included in the Cordless Telephone Guide. The guide also covers each of the accessories that are shipped with the telephone. See <u>Table 24</u> and the installation notes that follow for installation guidelines.

Table 24Cordless Telephone Installation Guidelines

| Telephone Model | Max range (ideal conditions) |
|--------------------|--|
| 3106C (3C10406A) | Approximately 915 meters (3,000 ft.) |
| 3107C (3C10407A) | Approximately 1,370 meters (4,500 ft.) |

Cordless Telephone Installation Notes

- Because of radio frequency issues, you can install a limited number of cordless telephones in one location. In an ideal environment, up to 10 cordless phones can be used in the same environment. For installations of three or fewer cordless telephones, 3Com recommends that you use 3107C Telephones. For installations of 3 to 10 cordless telephones, 3Com recommends that you use 3106C Telephones.
- Table 24 shows the telephones' range (the distance between the base unit and the telephone) under ideal conditions. The actual range depends on environmental factors such as building structure, size of the room, RF interference, and other electronic equipment installed in the same area. A higher location for the base unit reduces the factors that can interfere with the coverage area.
- Place the base unit in the center of your coverage area. If the phone will be also used in the outdoor area, install the base unit an area close to the window.
- For best performance, make sure you have at least five meters of space between base units and that each base unit antenna is raised to the vertical position.
- Avoid placing the base unit in a location surrounded by metal surfaces or near a PC, a monitor, or a telephone.

3Com Entry Telephones The 3Com 3100 Entry Telephone does not have a display panel to show the status of the process of initializing the telephone when you connect it to an NBX system or when you reboot the phone of the NBX system. However, the 3100 Entry Telephone indicates its status by displaying a series of blinking patterns using its message waiting indicator light. Table 25 describes the 3100 Entry Telephone initialization states.

| Blink Pattern | Telephone State | Notes | |
|---|--|--|--|
| 2 blinks in 2 seconds | The 3100 is searching for an NBX system using a Layer 2 protocol | No action required. If the | |
| Pause 2 seconds | | 3100 does not find an NBX system using Layer 2, it will | |
| Repeat | 5 | search for an NBX system using a Layer 3 protocol. | |
| 3 blinks in 3 seconds | The 3100 is searching for | The 3100 will start using | |
| Pause 2 seconds | an NBX system using a Layer 2 protocol | Layer 3 after it has received IP configuration information | |
| Repeat | | from a DHCP server. | |
| Continuous slow blinks with no pause | The 3100 has detected an NBX system using a Layer 2 protocol. | If this pattern persists, it could indicate that the device is not in the NBX database. You should use the NBX NetSet utility to add the device to the system. | |
| 3 blinks in 1.5 seconds | The 3100 is trying to | If this state persists for 20 or | |
| Pause 2 seconds | obtain IP information from a DHCP Server. | more seconds then the device is not able to detect a DHCP server. | |
| Repeat | If it is successful the | | |
| | pattern will change to Layer 3 Discovery. If DHCP configuration fails then the 3100 pattern will temporarily indicate DHCP Failure, described below. | If this state ends and the device transitions to DHCP Failure, and the device is expected to utilize DHCP, then the DHCP offer is incorrect or missing Option-184 information. Correct the DHCP configuration or program IP information into the 3100 using the 3Com Telephone Local Configuration tool, which is described in the NBX Administrator's Guide. | |

 Table 25
 3100 Entry Telephone Initialization Status

| Blink Pattern | Telephone State | Notes |
|------------------------|---|--|
| 10 blinks in 2 seconds | The 3100 has detected | Configure the network |
| Pause 2 seconds | more than one NBX system on the local subnet and does not have information to select the correct one. | correctly so that only a single NBX system is on the subnet. |
| 25 blinks in 5 seconds | The 3100 was unable to get information from a DHCP server. | If this occurs within the first |
| Pause | | minute (typically in the first 10 to 20 seconds) of |
| New pattern | | searching for a DHCP server then a DHCP Offer was received from the server but it did not contain valid or complete information. |
| | | If this state occurs after a minute or more of searching for a DHCP server then no DHCP Offer was received. |

 Table 25
 3100 Entry Telephone Initialization Status

Cordless Telephone Installation Notes

 Because of radio frequency issues, you can install a limited number of cordless telephones in one location. In an ideal environment, up to 10 cordless phones can be used in the same environment. For installations of three or fewer cordless telephones, 3Com recommends that you use 3107C Telephones. For installations of 3 to 10 cordless telephones, 3Com recommends that you use 3106C Telephones.

| Verifying Telephone Installation | When you initialize a telephone by enabling the Auto Discover feature (see <u>"Using Auto Discover for Initial System Configuration</u> " on page 92), the display panel on the telephone shows several messages. After the initialization is complete, the display panel shows the current system date and time and the telephone's extension. Pick up the handset and listen for dial tone. |
|---|--|
| | The 3100 Entry Telephone does not have a display panel. To verify successful initialization of a 3100 Entry Telephone through Auto Discover feature: |
| 1 | Login to the NBX NetSet utility as administrator and then click Device Configuration > Telephones. |
| 2 | Verify the MAC address listed in the Telephones list against the MAC address printed on the label on the bottom of the telephone. |
| 3 | Make note of the extension assigned to the telephone. |
| 4 | Use another NBX telephone on the system to call the Entry telephone. |
| | |
| Adding a 3Com Attendant Console | The optional 3Com Attendant Console provides extension button mappings for up to 100 extensions per console and displays the current status of each mapped extension. A receptionist typically uses the Attendant Console to connect incoming calls to telephone extensions. |
| | When you install a new NBX system, add all telephones before you Auto Discover any Attendant Console. The Auto Discover process assigns the extension of each known telephone to a button on the Attendant Console and associates the Attendant Console with an existing telephone extension. |
| Connecting Power to the Attendant Console | Connect the AC power converter provided with the Attendant Console to the power connection on the bottom of the Attendant Console and then connect the other end of the power converter to an AC power outlet. On all NBX devices, the power connector is marked by the DC power symbol: |
| | The 3Com 3105 Attendant Console complies with the IEEE 802.3af standard, commonly called Power over Ethernet (PoE), so a power |

converter is an optional component. To use a power converter, order power adapter 3C10224-XX, where XX is the country code:

- AA (Australia/New Zealand)
- CN (China)
- ME (Europe/LAT)
- SA (South Africa)
- UK (United Kingdom)
- US (North America)

Using a Powered Ethernet Cable to Power an Attendant Console

To eliminate the power converter, you can connect your Attendant Console to a powered Ethernet cable. The Attendant Console cannot accept power directly from an IEEE 802.3af-compliant power source. You must use a device to remove power from the cable. The device you use to connect an Attendant Console to a powered Ethernet cable depends on the type of Ethernet power in use at your facility. NBX devices work with:

- Ethernet power sources that comply with the IEEE 802.3af standard
- 3Com Ethernet power sources that predate 802.3af

See <u>Table 26</u> for power connection instructions for 3Com Attendant Consoles.

| Power Source | Connection Details | |
|--|---------------------------|---|
| AC power adapter | 11 | Connect the AC adapter's power jack to the |
| The Attendant Console can accept power from a power adapter. Use the adapter that comes with your Attendant Console. | | power connector 1 on the bottom of the Attendant Console. Connect an Ethernet cable 2 from a 3Com Telephone switch port or from a data jack to the Ethernet connector on the bottom of the Attendant Console. |
| | 1 2 | 3105 Attendant Console, top 1105 Attendant Console, bottom |

118 Chapter 3: Telephones and Attendant Consoles

Table 26 Connecting Power to a 3Com Attendant Console (continued)

| Power Source | Connection Details | |
|---|---------------------------|--|
| Power over Ethernet (802.3af-compliant) power source | | The 3105 is compliant with 802.3af. You can connect a powered Ethernet cable 1 , directly to the device's Ethernet connector. |
| | | The 1105 predates the 802.3af standard so you must use a 3Com Network Jack to NBX Phone Power Module (3CNJVOIPMOD-NBX) 1 . The module receives power from an ver source through an Ethernet cable 2 and splits thernet connection 3 and a power jack 4 . |
| 3Com Ethernet Power Source: 3C10220 (12-port) 3C10222 (24-port) | | 2 The 3Com Ethernet Power Source predates 802.3af so you must use a 3Com NBX Telephone Power Splitter (3C10223) 1 to split a powered Ethernet connection 2 into an unpowered Ethernet connection 3 and a power jack 4 |
| | | 2 3105 Attendant Console, top 1105 Attendant Console, bottom |

Connecting the Attendant Console to the Network To connect a 3Com Attendant Console:

1 Connect the Attendant Console to the Ethernet port located on the bottom of the 3Com telephone. The telephone's Ethernet port is identified by this symbol:

ㅁ

The Attendant Console does not need to be connected directly to a telephone. You can connect it to the LAN instead. The LAN port on the bottom of the Attendant Console is identified by this symbol:

Using Auto Discover for an Attendant Console

When you use the Auto Discover feature to configure an Attendant Console, the NBX system associates the Attendant Console with a telephone based on the these factors:

- If one or more Attendant Consoles are already configured in the system, the Auto Discover process finds all 3Com Telephones that currently have an associated Attendant Console and associates the new Attendant Console with the telephone that has the lowest extension number. For example, if the existing Attendant Console is associated with extension 1000, the new Attendant Console will also be associated with extension 1000.
- The system will map up to 100 extensions to the Attendant Console. These extensions will always be the lowest 100 extensions even if these extensions are already mapped to an existing Attendant Console. To map other extensions to an Attendant Console, you must map the extensions manually using the Attendant Console Button Mappings screen in the NBX NetSet utility.

Typically, you want to associate an Attendant Console with the telephone beside it. If the Auto Discover process associates an Attendant Console with a telephone other than the one you want, see <u>"Associating an Attendant Console with a Specific Telephone"</u> on page 121 for instructions on how to change the association.



Do not Auto Discover the Attendant Console before you have configured all telephones and Analog Line Cards. To Auto Discover an Attendant Console:

1 In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration > System Settings > System-wide. The System Settings dialog box (Figure 33) appears.

Figure 33 System Settings — System-wide Dialog Box

| System Configuration | - System Settin | gs | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|----------|--------|
| | | | | | | |
| Host Name: | SuperStack3 | | Auto Discover T | elephones | | |
| SMTP Domain Name: | | | Auto Add F | hones to Call | Pickup G | roup O |
| IP Address: | 10.230.55.5 | | Auto Discover L | ine Cards | | |
| Default Gateway: | 10.230.55.1 | | Auto Discover D |)igital Line Ca | rds | |
| Subnet Mask: | 255.255.255.0 | | Auto Discover A | Attendant Cons | soles | |
| Primary DNS: | | | Handsfree on Ti Handsfree on E | | er | |
| Secondary DNS: | | | VLAN Enabled | | | |
| Tertiary DNS: | | | VLAN ID: | Not Applical | ble | |
| Network Protocol: | IP-on-the-fly | <u>~</u> | IP VLAN Ta | agging Enabled | ł | |
| Extensions Start at: | 1000 | | System-wide C | LIR | | |
| External Prefix: | 9 | | Music on Hold | | | |
| Caller ID Wait Timer: | 6 | | Music on Trans | fer | | |
| External Paging Delay: | Long Delay | | One Button Tra | | | |
| | | | NBX Messaging | | | |
| | | | Third-Party Mes | saging | | |
| | | | Pulse Dialing Call Timer | | | |
| 0-0 | | | our miner | | | |
| 3COM | | OK | Cancel | Apply | Help | |

- 1 Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover.
- 2 Enable Auto Discover Attendant Consoles and click OK.
- **3** Wait at least 2 minutes for the NBX system to Auto Discover the Attendant Console and assign the extensions of all known telephones to its buttons.

Attendant Console Notes

When automatically mapping extensions to an Attendant Console, the system maps the first 100 extension to Attendant Console buttons except for the extension associated with the Attendant Console. If you add a second Attendant Console to the system, that Attendant Console will also have the first 100 extensions mapped to its buttons. To map extensions above the first 100, you must manually map the extensions. For more about manually adding an Attendant Console and mapping Attendant Console buttons, see Chapter 3, "Device Configuration," in the NBX Administrator's Guide.

 When you are finished configuring the Attendant Console, you can use the NBX LabelMaker utility to create printed labels.

To associate an Attendant Console with a specific telephone:

Associating an Attendant Console with a Specific Telephone

1 In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.

- 2 In the Device Configuration window, click the Attendant Console tab.
- **3** Select an Attendant Console from the list.
- 4 Click Modify.
- **5** In the *Modify Attendant Console* window, select a telephone from the list.
- 6 Click *Apply* and review your changes.
- 7 Click *OK* to close the dialog box.

Verifying Extension Assignments on an Attendant Console

After you Auto Discover an Attendant Console, you can verify which telephone extensions have been assigned to the Attendant Console buttons.

To verify the extension assignments:

- 1 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- 2 Click the Attendant Console tab.
- **3** Select the Attendant Console from the list.
- **4** Click the *Button Mappings* button. The Attendant Console Button Mappings dialog box appears.

For more about button mappings on an Attendant Console, see Chapter 3, "Device Configuration," in the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.

Attendant ConsoleYou can create and print Attendant Console labels using the NBXLabelsLabelMaker utility. To download the LabelMaker utility:

- 1 Log into NBX NetSet as an administrator.
- 2 Click Downloads > LabelMaker.

After you print the labels and then cut them out, remove the plastic cover from the Attendant Console and install the labels. On the 3Com 3105 Attendant Console, remove the cover by pulling up on the two tabs at the top of the Attendant Console until the top of the cover pops off.



Figure 34 3105 Attendant Console Label Cover Tabs

| Adding a Remote Telephone | NBX system software (release R4.2 and higher) supports Network Address Port Translation (NAPT, also called NAT overloading). NAPT allows you to put a 3Com Telephone behind a device that applies network address translation at a remote location, such as a home office, and connect to the NBX NCP through an Internet connection. One typical configuration is to connect a cable/DSL modem to a small office/home office router that includes a firewall and Ethernet ports. You connect the 3Com Telephone directly to one of the Ethernet ports. Another option is use the pcXset soft telephone application instead of a 3Com Telephone. |
|------------------------------|--|
| | For information about installing a remote telephone, see Chapter 3, "Device Configuration," in the NBX Administrator's Guide. |

ANALOG LINES

This chapter tells you how to install and how to verify the successful installation of optional Analog Line Cards and to configure analog ports.

The NBX V3000 includes four analog line ports. Each NBX Analog Line Card provides access for up to four analog telephone lines into your NBX system. You can add more analog line ports by adding an expansion chassis and NBX Analog Line Cards to the system. The NBX system treats a line card port as an extension and assigns a unique extension number to each port.

You use the Auto Discover feature to detect analog line ports, and you define the starting address used by the Auto Discover process in the system dial plan. For a 4-digit dial plan, the starting address is 7250. For a 3-digit dial plan, the default starting address is 750. The Auto Discover process assigns the first unassigned number to the first analog line port.



Before you install any Analog Line Cards, you may want to configure the Outdialing Prefixes. For information on this topic, see "Outdialing Prefix Settings" in Chapter 2 of the Administrator's Guide or the Help for Dial Plan > Operations > Set Outdial Prefixes.

| Auto Discover Analog Line Cards | | To Auto Discover analog line ports: |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| | 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration. |
| | 2 | Click the System Settings tab. |
| | 3 | Click the System-wide button. |
| | 4 | Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover. |
| | 5 | Enable Auto Discover Line Cards. |
| | 6 | Click <i>OK</i> . |

| Inserting an Analog Line Card | When you insert an Analog Line Card into an NBX chassis, you may leave the system powered up. The Auto Discover process begins as soon as the system detects the new card. |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | To insert the Analog Line Card: |
| 1 | Find the MAC address of the card on the label on the card. |
| 2 | Record the MAC address for the configuration process. |
| 3 | Select a slot for the card in the chassis and use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the blank faceplate from the slot. |
| 4 | Insert the analog line card into the slot. |
| 5 | Slide the card into the chassis until you feel it touch the connectors. |
| 6 | To seat the card into the connectors, apply firm pressure to both the left and right sides of the front of the card. |
| Ĩ | CAUTION: If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions. |
| 7 | Tighten the left and right screws on the front of the card to secure it to the chassis. |
| | Wait at least two minutes for the card to initialize and for the system to update its database. |
| Verifying an Analog Line Card | After you have added an Analog Line Card, you can verify that the card was properly discovered and is ready for configuration by: |
| | Using the NBX NetSet Utility |
| | Using Status Lights |
| Using the NBX NetSet Utility | To verify the status of an Analog Line Card using the NBX NetSet utility: |
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window click Device Configuration. |
| 2 | In the Device Configuration dialog box, click the Line Card Ports tab. |
| 3 | Compare the MAC addresses to the MAC address of the card that you recorded before you inserted the card. <u>Table 27</u> shows a typical set of MAC addresses, with the associated port numbers and assigned extensions. |

| ATA Card or Port | MAC Address | Extension | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------|--|
| Port 1 | 00:e0:bb:03:91:45 | 7251 | |
| Port 2 | 00:e0:bb:03:91:46 | 7250 | |
| Port 3 | 00:e0:bb:03:91:47 | 7252 | |
| Port 4 | 00:e0:bb:03:91:48 | 7253 | |

 Table 27
 MAC Addresses for the Ports on an Analog Line Card



The ports on an Analog Line Card are usually not auto discovered in order. The example in Table 27 shows that port 2 was discovered first (because it was assigned the lowest extension number), then ports 1, 3, and 4.

Using Status Lights

You can use the status lights on an Analog Line Card to help verify that the card has been properly discovered by the NBX system.

When an Analog Line Card is initializing, all four status lights (labelled 1 through 4) blink on and off in unison, approximately once every second.

After an Analog Line Card has been auto discovered, each status light is off most of the time, but blinks on briefly approximately once every 10 seconds. The order in which the status lights blink is the same as the order in which the ports were auto discovered. For the example shown in Table 27, the lights would blink on in the order 2, 1, 3, 4.

For detailed information on Analog Line Card status lights, see page 32.

126 CHAPTER 4: ANALOG LINES

ANALOG DEVICES

This chapter tells you how to install and verify the successful installation of these analog devices:

- Analog Terminal Card
- Analog Terminal Adapter
- The ATA port on an NBX V3000

These devices allow you to attach analog telephones and fax machines to the NBX system.



WARNING: The 3Com Analog Terminal Adapter is intended for connection only on internal LANs. Do not install it outside of buildings. Do not connect it to any networking device outside of the building in which the telephones are located.

A four-port Analog Terminal Card (ATC), a single-port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA), or the ATA port on an NBX V3000 allows analog (2500-series compliant) devices, such as cordless telephones and fax machines, to operate with NBX systems.

Certain limitations apply because of the differences between an analog device and a 3Com Telephone:

- A user can dial extension 500 on a telephone connected to either an analog port to gain access to voice mail.
- A user cannot forward calls to voice mail by enabling a button such as the FWD MAIL button on the 3Com Business Telephone. You can use a feature code to have the system automatically transfer calls to voice mail if your analog telephone is not answered.
- An analog telephone can make or answer only one call. If the analog telephone is in use, an incoming call automatically goes to voice mail. However, if you have purchased the Call Waiting service from your telephone company, and you have an incoming analog telephone line

| | mapped directly to your analog telephone, you can press the hook switch to toggle back and forth between two calls. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| | To transfer a call from an analog telephone, you must depress the hook switch briefly to obtain dial tone, and then dial the extension to which you want to transfer the call and hang up. |
| | By using feature codes, you can create conference calls and forward calls using your analog telephone. See the NBX Feature Codes Guide in the NBX NetSet utility. |
| | Configuring an analog port for fax operation optimizes the performance for inbound and outbound faxes but compromises audio quality. If you make a voice call using the analog device (for example, if you use the telephone portion of the fax machine), the quality of the audio may be affected. If you make a VTL call using the analog device, the audio may be unusable. |
| Adding an Analog Terminal Card | To add an optional Analog Terminal Card to the NBX system: |
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration. The System Configuration dialog box appears. |
| 2 | Click <i>System-wide</i> . The System Settings — System-wide dialog box appears. |
| 3 | Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover. |
| 4 | Click the Auto Discover Telephones check box to select it. |
| | The Auto Discover Telephones check box enables and disables the Auto Discover process for Analog Terminal Cards, Analog Terminal Adapters, and 3Com Telephones. |
| 5 | Click <i>OK</i> . |
| | |
| Inserting an Analog Terminal Card | When you insert the ATC into the chassis, you may leave the system powered up. The Auto Discover process begins as soon as the system senses the new card. |
| ì | Functionally, ATCs 3C10114 and 3C10114C are identical. However, 3C10114C uses some different internal components so that 3C10114C requires NBX software release R4.1 or higher. |

To insert the analog terminal adapter card:

- **1** Find the MAC address of the ATC on the label on the card.
- 2 Record the MAC address for the configuration process.
- **3** Select a slot for the card in the chassis and use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the blank faceplate from the slot.
- 4 Insert the card into the slot.
- **5** Slide the card into the chassis until you feel it touch the connectors.
- **6** To seat the card into the connectors, apply firm pressure to both the left and right sides of the front of the card.



CAUTION: If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions.

7 Tighten the left and right screws on the front of the card to secure it to the chassis.



Wait at least 2 minutes for the Analog Terminal Card to initialize and for the system to update its database.

| Verifying Analog Terminal Card Ports | After you have used the Auto Discover feature to add an Analog Terminal Card, you can verify that the card is properly installed by using the NBX NetSet utility, described next, and by examining the status lights on the front of the card, which are described on <u>page 41</u> . |
|---|--|
| Using the NBX NetSet Utility | To verify the proper installation of an Analog Terminal Card using the NBX NetSet utility: |
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click Device Configuration. |

2 In the Device Configuration dialog box, click the ATA tab. (See Figure 35.)

| evice Configuration | | | | | Call Park Attendant Console |
|---------------------|------|----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Ext. | Telephones Telephones Telephones | bhone Groups 1 | Line Card Ports Dig | ital Line Cards ATA |
| Add | | MAC_AUGLESS | | | Last Name |
| Modify | 1002 | 00:e0:bb:00:f9:b7 | Online | Susan | Rellner |
| Modiny | 1003 | 00:e0:bb:01:09:34 | Online | Toni | Vaillancourt |
| D | 1005 | 00:e0:bb:01:09:33 | Online | FAX Machine | A |
| Remove | 1006 | 00:e0:bb:01:09:36 | Online | FAX Machine | В |
| Status | 1007 | 00:e0:bb:01:09:35 | Online | FAX Machine | с |
| IP Settings | | | | | |
| Advanced Settings | | | | | |
| وری 3com | | | | | C 2 |

Figure 35 ATA Tab

3 Compare the MAC addresses or port numbers that appear in the list to the MAC address and port numbers you recorded before you inserted this card.

The four ports of an Analog Terminal Card appear in the list of ATAs, along with the ports of any previously discovered Analog Terminal Cards, and any Analog Terminal Adapters (ATAs) and the ATA port on an NBX V3000.

The Auto Discover Telephones check box (*System Configuration* > *System-wide*) is how you enable the Auto Discover feature for the four ports on each Analog Terminal Card, the single port on each Analog Terminal Adapter, and for 3Com Telephones.

| Adding an Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) | To add an Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) to your NBX system you must first enable the Auto Discover feature. You Auto Discover an Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) in the same way that you discover 3Com telephones and Analog Terminal Cards. |
|---|--|
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration. The System Configuration dialog box appears. |
| 2 | Click System-wide. The System Settings dialog box appears. |
| 3 | Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover. |
| 4 | Click the Auto Discover Telephones check box to select it. |
| i> | The Auto Discover Telephones check box enables and disables the Auto Discover process for Analog Terminal Cards, Analog Terminal Adapters, and 3Com Telephones. |
| 5 | Click <i>OK</i> . |
| | |
| Connecting the Analog Terminal Adapter | After you have enabled the Auto Discover feature, connect the Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) to the same network segment as the one on which the NCP resides. To connect the ATA: |
| 1 | Connect the AC power converter provided with the ATA to the power connector on the ATA. Connect the other end of the power converter to an AC power outlet. |
| | If you are using a powered Ethernet cable with your 3C10400 ATA, see the <u>"Using Power over Ethernet with a 3C10400 ATA"</u> next. The 3C10120B cannot use a powered Ethernet cable due to its power requirements. |
| 2 | Connect a Category 5 Ethernet cable to the ATA RJ-45 connector that has no icon beside it. Connect the other end of the Category 5 Ethernet cable to the LAN on which the NCP is located. |
| | |
| 3 | Wait 2 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices) for the NBX system to discover the ATA. |
| | Wait 2 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices) |
| | Wait 2 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices) for the NBX system to discover the ATA. If the ATA is connected to a fax machine, configure the port for fax |
| | Wait 2 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices) for the NBX system to discover the ATA. If the ATA is connected to a fax machine, configure the port for fax usage: |



Configuring an ATA port for fax operation optimizes the performance for inbound and outbound faxes. If you make a voice call using the ATA device (for example, if you use the telephone portion of the fax machine), the quality of the audio may be affected. If you make a VTL call using the ATA device, the audio may be unusable. If you configure the port for fax operation, expect lower quality voice calls on that port. If you configure the port for voice calls, the performance is not optimized for faxes.

Using Power over Ethernet with a 3C10400 ATA

The NBX Analog Terminal Adapter 3C10400 meets the IEEE 802.3af standard for Power over Ethernet and can accept power directly from an 802.3af-compliant power source. Earlier models of the ATA, 3C10120B, require an AC power converter due to their power requirements.

The table describes how to connect a powered Ethernet cable to a 3C10400 Analog Terminal Adapter.

| Power Source | Connection Details |
|---|---|
| Power over Ethernet (IEEE 802.3af) power source | Connect the powered Ethernet cable directly to the telephone's Ethernet connector. No separate power connection is required. |
| 3Com Ethernet Power Source: 3C10220 (12-port) 3C10222 (24-port) | The 3Com Ethernet Power Source predates 802.3af. Any NBX device can be powered by a 3Com Ethernet Power Source if you use an NBX Power Splitter (3C10223 – package of 12). The NBX Power Splitter removes power from a powered Ethernet cable and splits it into a power jack and an unpowered Ethernet connection that you connect to the ATA's LAN port (labeled LAN) and power connection (labeled). |



CAUTION: You can damage an NBX device by using an NBX power splitter (3C10223) with the 3Com Network Jack Power over Ethernet Multiport Midspan Solution (3CNJPSE24). Use the NBX power splitter (3C10223) **only** with the 3Com Ethernet Power Source (3C10220, 12-port, or 3C10222, 24-port).

Verifying an Analog Terminal Adapter or the ATA Port

After the NBX system has discovered an Analog Terminal Adapter or the ATA port on an NBX V3000, you can verify that the port has been properly discovered and see which extension number the system has assigned. The system assigns the next lowest available extension to the analog port.

To verify that the NBX system properly discovered the ATA:

- 1 In the *NBX NetSet Main Menu* window, click Device Configuration. The Device Configuration dialog box appears.
- 2 Click the ATA tab. See <u>Figure 36</u>. The ATA tab displays information about all discovered ATAs and all ports on discovered Analog Terminal Adapter Cards

| evice Configuration | | Telephones Telep | · · · · · | | all Park Attendant Console tal Line Cards ATA |
|---------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--|
| Add | Ext. | MAC Address | Status | First Name | Last Name |
| Modify | 1002 1003 1005 | 00:e0:bb:00:f9:b7 00:e0:bb:01:09:34 00:e0:bb:01:09:33 | Online Online | Susan Toni FAX Machine | Rellner Vaillancourt |
| Remove | 1005 | 00:e0:bb:01:09:33 00:e0:bb:01:09:36 00:e0:bb:01:09:35 | Online Online Online | FAX Machine FAX Machine FAX Machine | A B C |
| Status | *1008 *1003 | 00:e0:bb:01:15:59 00:e0:bb:01:15:5a | Unknown Unknown | New New | User User |
| IP Settings | *1010 *1011 | 00:e0:bb:01:15:58 00:e0:bb:00:fb:0e | Unknown Unknown | New New | User User |
| Advanced Settings | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| ي چې scom | | | | | • 🖸 ? |

| Figure 36 | Device Configuration | on Dialog Box — ATA Tab | |
|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|

3 Use the MAC address that you recorded prior to installing the ATA to identify it in the list. The MAC address on the ATA and the MAC address displayed in the list on the ATA tab should be identical.

Use the status lights on an ATA to help verify that the ATA has been properly discovered:

- For information on the status light of the ATA port of an NBX V3000, see page 22.
- For information on the status light of the ATA 3C10400, see <u>page 42</u>.

134 CHAPTER 5: ANALOG DEVICES

BRI-ST DIGITAL LINE CARD

This chapter tells you how to install into an NBX chassis and verify the successful installation of the optional ISDN BRI-ST (Basic Rate Interface) Digital Line Card.



For information about installing the system hardware components, see <u>Chapter 2</u>.

The following sections describe how to add and configure a BRI-ST Digital Line Card to handle four BRI spans using the ST interface. In this section, and in the NBX NetSet utility, digital line cards are referred to as cards and boards.

This section covers the following topics:

- Adding a BRI-ST Digital Line Card
- Verifying a BRI-ST Digital Line Card



Before you install any BRI-ST Digital Line Cards, you may want to configure the Outdialing Prefix settings. For information on this topic, see the "Outdialing Prefix Settings" section in Chapter 2, "Dial Plan," in the NBX Administrator's Guide or the Help: Dial Plan > Operations > Set Outdial Prefixes.

| Adding a BRI-ST Digital Line Card | To add an ISDN BRI-ST Digital Line Card to an NBX system, use the information in these sections: |
|--|---|
| | Preparing the NBX System for BRI Cards |
| | Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for BRI |
| | Inserting the BRI-ST Digital Line Card |
| Preparing the NBX System for BRI Cards | Before you insert the BRI-ST Digital Line Card into an NBX chassis, order an ISDN BRI-ST line from your telephone carrier and have them install it. |
| Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for BRI | When you order BRI services with DID, CLIP, or MSN, the local telephone carrier assigns a block of telephone numbers to you. You may be able to request that the local telephone carrier pass you a specific number of digits for each incoming telephone call. Sometimes the carrier does not offer any choice. In either case, you need to know how many digits the carrier passes. |
| | Example: Carriers commonly pass either the last three digits or last four digits of the number for each incoming call. |
| | Sometimes the last digits of the telephone numbers the carrier assigns to you do not match the telephone extension numbers you want to use for internal calls. You can create entries in your Dial Plan file to translate the incoming numbers into the corresponding extension numbers. |
| | Example: You want to use internal extensions from 4000 through 4999, but the local telephone carrier assigns you numbers from 617-555-3500 through 617-555-4499. You can create translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file to translate an incoming digit sequence such as 3795 into extension number 4295, and a sequence such as 4213 into 4713. The configuration would require several translator entries to handle subsets of the total range. A unique set of entries would handle incoming digit sequences from 3500 through 3599, from 3600 through 3699, and each of the other sequences in which the first two digits were unique in the range from 37XX through 44XX. |
| | If the DDI/DID numbers match your internal extension numbers, the translator entries in your Dial Plan configuration file can be much simpler. |
| | Example: You plan to use internal extensions from 100 through 299, and the local telephone company assigns you numbers from |

| | 617-555-4100 through 617-555-4299. If the local telephone carrier passes you three digits, you need no translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file. If the carrier passes you four digits, you could add a single set of translator entries to the configuration file to remove the first digit (4) and use the remaining three digits as the internal extension. |
|---|--|
| Enabling the Auto Discover Feature | To enable the Auto Discover feature for digital line cards: |
| 1 | Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator login ID and password. |
| 2 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration. |
| 3 | In the System Configuration window, click the System Settings tab. |
| 4 | Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover. |
| 5 | Click the Auto Discover Digital Line Cards check box to select it. |
| 6 | Click <i>OK</i> . |
| Inserting the BRI-ST Digital Line Card | When you insert the BRI-ST card into the chassis, you may leave the system powered up. The Auto Discover process begins as soon as the system senses the new card. |
| | To insert the BRI-ST card into the chassis: |
| 1 | Write down the MAC address of the BRI-ST card. |
| 2 | Select a slot for the BRI-ST card in the chassis, and use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the blank faceplate from the slot. |
| 3 | Insert the BRI-ST card into the slot. |
| 4 | Slide the BRI-ST card into the chassis until you feel it touch the connectors. |
| 5 | To seat the BRI-ST card into the connectors, press firmly on both sides of the front of the card. |
| Ĩ | CAUTION: If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions and misalignment. |
| 6 | Tighten the left and right screws on the front of the BRI-ST card to secure it to the chassis. |

7 Wait 3 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices) for the system to discover the BRI-ST card and update the database.



When you insert the BRI-ST Digital Line Card, it begins an initialization sequence. Also, because you enabled the Auto Discover Digital Line Cards check box, the system recognizes the addition of the BRI-ST card and begins to update its database. Allow at least 3 minutes for both of these processes to be completed. If you attach a console cable to the CONSOLE port on the BRI-ST card and use Hyperterminal software to view the text output, you can see status messages. See <u>"Connecting a Computer to an NCP"</u> in Chapter 10.

Verifying a BRI-ST
Digital Line CardAfter you Auto Discover a BRI-ST Digital Line Card, you can verify that it
was properly discovered by using the NBX NetSet utility, described next,
or by viewing the card's status lights, which is described later.

Using the NBX NetSet To verify that the BRI-ST card has been properly discovered: Utility

- 1 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- 2 Click the Digital Line Cards tab.
- **3** Examine the list of Digital Line Cards to find the BRI-ST board with the correct MAC address. The *Type* column should contain *BRI* and the *Status* column should contain *Ready*.
- **4** From the Select Device Type pull-down list, select ISDN BRI Channel List.
- **5** Click *Apply*. The ISDN BRI Channel List appears.
- 6 Verify that the *Ext.* column contains an extension for each channel.
- 7 Verify that the *Status* column contains *Ready* for each channel.

You can also use the status lights on the front of the card to verify that a BRI-ST Digital Line Card has been properly discovered. See <u>page 40</u> for details about BRI-ST card status lights.

You are now ready to configure the ISDN BRI-ST Digital Line Card. See Chapter 3, "Device Configuration," in the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.

E1 ISDN PRI DIGITAL LINE CARD

This section describes how to add an E1 Digital Line Card and how to connect to an E1 service provided by the local telephone company. In the NBX NetSet utility, digital line cards are referred to as either cards or boards.



For information about installing system hardware, see Chapter 2.

This section covers the following topics:

- Adding an E1 Digital Line Card
- Verifying an E1 Digital Line Card

Installation Notes

- See <u>"NBX Licensing"</u> on page <u>47</u> for information on the number of E1 cards supported by an NBX Network Call Processor.
- You can configure an E1 Digital Line Card for ISDN PRI signaling only.
- The 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Card can be installed at a remote location and communicate with its NCP over a routed network. For information on how to set up a remote E1 card, see the NBX Administrator's Guide.
- Before you install E1 Digital Line Cards, you may want to configure the Outdialing Prefix settings. For more information, see the Dial Plan chapter of the NBX Administrator's Guide.
- For IP operations, the 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Card must have either a static IP address or get its IP address from DHCP. The 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Card cannot use the NBX IP On-the-Fly feature.
- 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP lease times of less than 20 minutes.

| Adding an E1 Digital Line Card | The following sections tell you how to add an E1 Digital Line Card to an NBX system: |
|---|---|
| | Preparing the NBX System for E1 Cards |
| | Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for E1 |
| | Inserting the E1 Digital Line Card |
| Preparing the NBX System for E1 Cards | Before you insert the E1 Digital Line Card into the chassis, order an E1 line, with the specifications you want, from your telephone carrier, and have them install the line. |
| Ordering DID, CLIP, and MSN Services for E1 | When you order E1 with DID, CLIP, or MSN services, the local telephone carrier assigns a block of telephone numbers to you. Usually, you can request a specific range of numbers, but sometimes the carrier assigns numbers other than the ones you request. |
| | You may be able to request that the local telephone carrier pass you a specific number of digits for each incoming telephone call. Sometimes the carrier does not offer any choice. In either situation, you need to know how many digits the carrier passes. |
| | Example: Carriers commonly pass either the last three digits or last four digits of the number for each incoming call. Sometimes the last digits of the telephone numbers the carrier assigns to you do not match the telephone extension numbers you want to use for internal calls. You can create entries in your Dial Plan configuration file to translate the incoming numbers into the corresponding extension numbers. |
| | Example: You want to use internal extensions from 4000 through 4999, but the local telephone carrier assigns you numbers from 617-555-3500 through 617-555-4499. You can create translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file to translate an incoming digit sequence such as 3795 into extension number 4295, and a sequence such as 4213 into 4713. The configuration would require several translator entries to handle subsets of the total range. A unique set of entries would handle incoming digit sequences from 3500 through 3599, from 3600 through 3699, and each of the other sequences in which the first two digits were unique in the range from 37XX through 44XX. |

If the DDI/DID numbers match your internal extension numbers, the translator entries in your Dial Plan configuration file can be much simpler.

Example: You plan to use internal extensions from 100 through 299, and the local telephone company assigns you numbers from 617-555-4100 through 617-555-4299. If the local telephone carrier passes you three digits, you need no translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file. If the carrier passes you four digits, you could add a single set of translator entries to the configuration file to remove the first digit (4) and use the remaining three digits as the internal extension.

Enabling the Auto Discover Feature for Digital Line Cards To enable the Auto Discover feature for digital line cards:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator login ID and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click System Configuration.
- **3** In the *System Settings* tab window, click the *System-wide*.



Other check boxes may be selected based upon previous Auto Discoveries. You do not need to clear these check boxes to install the E1 card.

- 4 Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover.
- 5 Click the Auto Discover Digital Line Cards check box to select it.
- 6 Click OK.

Inserting the E1 Digital Line Card

When you insert the E1 card into the chassis, you may leave the system powered up. The Auto Discover process begins as soon as the system senses the new card.

To insert the E1 Digital Line Card into the chassis:

- **1** Write down the MAC address of the E1 card.
- **2** Select a slot for the E1 card in the chassis, and use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the blank faceplate from the slot.
- **3** Slide the E1 card into the chassis until you feel it touch the connectors.
- **4** To seat the E1 card into the connectors, press firmly on both sides of the front of the card.

| Ĩ | CAUTION: If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 5 | Tighten the left and right screws on the front of the E1 card. |
| 6 | Wait 3 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices). |
| Ì | When you insert the E1 Digital Line Card, it begins an initialization sequence. Also, because you enabled the Auto Discover Digital Line Cards check box, the system recognizes the addition of the E1 card and begins to update its database. Allow 3 minutes for both of these processes to be completed. On a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices, you may need to allow more time. If you attach a console cable to the CONSOLE port on the E1 card and use Hyperterminal software to view the text output from the card, you will see status messages associated with the initialization of the E1 card. See "Connecting a Computer to an NCP" in Chapter 10. |
| Verifying an E1 Digital Line Card | After the Auto Discover process is completed, you can verify that the E1 Digital Line Card has been properly discovered by using the NBX NetSet utility, described next, and by examining the status light on the Digital Line Card, described on page 143. |
| Using the NBX NetSet Utility | To verify the that the E1 Digital Line Card has been properly discovered you can use the NBX NetSet Utility. |
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click Device Configuration. |
| 2 | Click the <i>Digital Line Cards</i> tab. |
| 3 | Verify that the E1 Digital Line Card appears in the <i>T1/ISDN Board List.</i> To help identify the board, use the E1 board MAC address that you wrote down. The <i>Status</i> column should contain <i>Ready</i> . |
| 4 | From the Select Device Type pull-down list, select ISDN PRI Channel List. |
| 5 | Click Apply. The ISDN PRI Channel List appears. |
| 6 | Scroll through the channel list to verify that 30 channels appear. Use the MAC addresses of the channels to identify the ones associated with the E1 Digital Line Card. The MAC addresses of the channels follow in sequential order from the MAC address of the E1 Digital Line Card. |

Using the Status
LightsYou can use the E1 Digital Line Card status lights to verify that the E1 card
was properly discovered.

3C10165C — After the Auto Discover process has completed, and before you connect the E1 Digital Line Card to the telephone company's E1 line, the CF (Carrier Fail) light should appear solid green.

3C10165D — After the Auto Discover process has completed, and before you connect the E1 Digital Line Card to the telephone company's E1 line, the POST (Power On Self Test) light and the NCP light should both be solid green.

For a complete description of all the status lights on the front of the E1 card, see <u>"E1 Digital Line Card"</u> on page 36.

You are now ready to configure the E1 Digital Line Card. See the *NBX Administrator's Guide* for instructions.

144 CHAPTER 7: E1 ISDN PRI DIGITAL LINE CARD
T1 DIGITAL LINE CARD

This chapter tells you how to install a T1 Digital Line Card. In the NBX NetSet utility, digital line cards are referred to as either cards or boards. The following sections describe how to add a T1 Digital Line Card (3C10116C and 3C10116D) and how to connect to a T1 service provided by the local telephone company:

- Adding a T1 Digital Line Card
- <u>Verifying the T1 Digital Line Card</u>

Installation Notes

- See <u>"NBX Licensing"</u> on page <u>47</u> for information on the number of T1 cards supported by an NBX Network Call Processor.
- You can choose to configure a T1 Digital Line Card to use one of two types of signaling:
 - DS1 protocol (sometimes called Standard T1). By default, the Auto Discover process selects DS1 as the signaling type.
 - ISDN PRI (Primary Rate Interface) signaling.
- The 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Card can be installed at a remote location and communicate with its NCP over a routed network. For information on how to set up a remote T1 card, see the NBX Administrator's Guide.
- Before you install any T1 Digital Line Cards, you may want to configure the Outdialing Prefix settings. For more information, see the Dial Plan chapter of the NBX Administrator's Guide.
- For IP operations, a 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Card must have either a static IP address or get its IP address from DHCP. 3C10116D T1 Cards cannot use the NBX IP On-the-Fly feature.
- 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP lease times of less than 20 minutes.

| | The NBX system provides E911 (emergency) connectivity if the T1 Digital Line Card is configured for ISDN PRI (Primary Rate Interface) signaling. The system provides the calling number (ANI) so that the emergency services personnel can determine the location of the caller from the E911 database. You must update the CO (PSAP) databases. |
|--|--|
| Adding a T1 Digital Line Card | Adding a T1 Digital Line Card to a system requires: <u>Preparing the NBX System for a T1 Card</u> |
| | Ordering DID (Direct Inward Dialing) Services for T1 |
| | Enabling Auto Discover for Digital Line Cards |
| | Inserting the T1 Digital Line Card |
| Preparing the NBX System for a T1 Card | Before you insert the T1 Digital Line Card into the chassis, order a T1 line from your telephone carrier and have them install the line. In some cases, the telephone company offers T1 services only with specific, pre-defined parameters. However, some telephone companies offer a number of configuration choices with their T1 services. |
| Ordering DID (Direct Inward Dialing) Services for T1 | When you order a T1 line with DID capability (Direct Inward Dial), the local telephone carrier assigns a block of telephone numbers to you. Usually, you can request a specific range of numbers, but sometimes the carrier assigns numbers other than the ones you request. |
| | You may be able to request that the local telephone carrier pass you a specific number of digits for each incoming telephone call. Sometimes the carrier does not offer any choice. In either situation, you need to know how many digits the carrier passes. |
| | Example: Carriers commonly pass either the last three digits or last four digits of the number for each incoming call. Sometimes the last digits of the telephone numbers the carrier assigns to you do not match the telephone extension numbers you want to use for internal calls. You can create entries in your Dial Plan configuration file to translate the incoming numbers into the corresponding extension numbers. |
| | Example: You want to use internal extensions from 4000 through 4999, but the local telephone carrier assigns you numbers from 617-555-3500 through 617-555-4499. You can create translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file to translate an incoming digit sequence such as 3795 |

into extension number 4295, and a sequence such as 4213 into 4713. The configuration would require several translator entries to handle subsets of the total range. A unique set of entries would handle incoming digit sequences from 3500 through 3599, from 3600 through 3699, and each of the other sequences in which the first two digits were unique in the range from 37XX through 44XX.

If the DDI/DID numbers match your internal extension numbers, the translator entries in your Dial Plan configuration file can be much simpler.

Example: You plan to use internal extensions from 100 through 299, and the local telephone company assigns you numbers from 617-555-4100 through 617-555-4299. If the local telephone carrier passes you three digits, you need no translator entries in the Dial Plan configuration file. If the carrier passes you four digits, you could add a single set of translator entries to the configuration file to remove the first digit (4) and use the remaining three digits as the internal extension.

Enabling Auto Discover for Digital Line Cards

To enable the Auto Discover feature for digital line cards:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator login ID and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window click System Configuration.
- **3** The System Configuration window appears. On the *System Settings* tab, click *System-wide*. The System-wide Dialog Box appears.
- 4 Clear all check boxes associated with Auto Discover.
- 5 Click the Auto Discover Digital Line Cards check box to select it.
- 6 Click OK.

Inserting the T1 When you insert the T1 Digital Line Card into the chassis, you may leave the system powered up. The Auto Discover process begins as soon as the system senses the new card.

To insert the T1 card:

- **1** Find the MAC address of the T1 card on the label on the component side of the card.
- **2** Record the MAC address for the configuration process.

- **3** Select a slot for the T1 card in the chassis and use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the blank faceplate from the slot.
- **4** Insert the T1 card into the slot.
- **5** Slide the T1 card into the chassis until you feel it touch the connectors.
- **6** To seat the T1 card into the connectors, apply firm pressure to both the left and right sides of the front of the card.



CAUTION: If you cannot seat the card with light pressure, remove it and check for obstructions.

- 7 Tighten the left and right screws on the front of the T1 card to secure it to the chassis.
- 8 Wait 3 minutes (more on a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices).



When you first insert the T1 card it must initialize and the NBX system must update its database. You must wait 3 minutes because the T1 card reboots twice during the initialization process. On a SuperStack 3 NBX system with many devices, you may need to allow additional time. If you attach a console cable to the CONSOLE port on the T1 card and use Hyperterminal software to view the text output from the card, you will see status messages associated with the two reboot processes. See "Connecting a Computer to an NCP" in Chapter 10.

| Verifying the T1 Digital Line Card | After the Auto Discover process has completed, you can verify that the T1 Digital Line Card has been properly discovered by using the NBX NetSet utility and by examining the T1 status lights. |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Using the NBX NetSet Utility | To use the NBX NetSet utility to verify that the T1 Digital Line Card has been properly discovered: |
| 1 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click Device Configuration. |
| 2 | Click the <i>Digital Line Cards</i> tab. |
| 3 | Verify that the T1 board appears in the T1/ISDN Board List. Use the MAC addresses of the channels to identify the ones associated with the T1 Digital Line Card. The MAC addresses of the channels follow in sequential order from the MAC address of the T1 Digital Line Card. |
| 4 | From the Select Device Type pull-down list, select T1 Channel List. |
| 5 | Click <i>Apply</i> . |

6 Scroll through the list of channels to verify that 24 channels appear in the list.

Using the Status
LightsTo verify the presence of a Digital Line Card in the system, you can use
the status lights on the front of the card.

3C10116C — After the Auto Discover process has completed, and before you connect the T1 Digital Line Card to the telephone company's E1 line, the CF (Carrier Fail) light should appear solid green.

3C10116D — After the Auto Discover process has completed, and before you connect the T1 Digital Line Card to the telephone company's E1 line, the POST (Power On Self Test) light and the NCP light should both be solid green.

For a complete description of the status lights on the front of the card, see <u>"T1 Digital Line Card"</u> on page 33.

You are now ready to configure the T1 Digital Line Card for either DS1 signaling or ISDN PRI signaling. See Chapter 2, "Device Configuration," in the *NBX Administrator's Guide* for instructions.

150 Chapter 8: T1 Digital Line Card

CONFIGURING IP TELEPHONY

This chapter describes IP telephony and provides instructions for configuring IP. It covers these topics:

- IP Telephony Overview
 - Implementing IP
 - <u>Standard IP Configuration</u>
 - IP On-the-Fly Configuration
 - Providing the NCP IP Address to Devices
- <u>Configuring IP Telephony</u>
 - <u>Selecting the Operating Mode</u>
 - <u>Selecting the Operating Mode</u>
 - <u>Configuring IP On-the-Fly</u>
 - <u>Configuring the DHCP Server</u>
 - Manually Configuring Telephone IP Settings
 - Automatically Configuring Telephone IP Settings
 - <u>Configuring Analog Line Card Ports</u>
 - Configuring T1, E1, and BRI Channels
 - Low-bandwidth Telephony
 - Broadband Telephony

| IP Telephony Overview | You can integrate the NBX system into any network infrastructure because it can operate at either Layer 2 (Ethernet) or Layer 3 (IP). |
|------------------------------|---|
| | If all the telephones in your office connect to the same Local Area Network (LAN) and you do not have your LAN segmented into subnetworks, there is little reason to implement IP telephony. Even if your network includes a few subnetworks, you can configure the routers to pass NBX Ethernet frames and avoid the need for IP operation. In a more widely distributed setting with several subnetworks or with a part of the network distributed over a Wide Area Network (WAN), IP telephony may be required. |
| | This section covers these topics: |
| | Implementing IP |
| | Standard IP Configuration |
| | <u>IP On-the-Fly Configuration</u> |
| | Providing the NCP IP Address to Devices |
| Implementing IP | You can implement IP in one of two ways: |
| | Standard IP |
| | All devices receive an IP address, either from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server or through manual assignment. |
| | IP On-the-Fly |
| | Telephones and other devices on the same subnet as the NCP communicate with other devices on that subnet using Ethernet frames so they do not need IP addresses. Devices receive an IP address only when they need to communicate with a device on a different subnet. The system administrator specifies a list of IP addresses using the NBX NetSet utility. When a local device needs an IP address, the system assigns one from the list. Remote devices receive their IP addresses either through a DHCP server or through manual assignment. |
| Standard IP Configuration | The NBX system must be configured differently in each of the following situations: |
| | All telephones and devices are on the same subnetwork as the NCP. |
| | |

I

If you use Standard IP with a DHCP server, verify that the server has enough IP addresses to handle the number of telephones and devices in the NBX system.

If you are not using a DHCP server, use the NBX NetSet utility to configure an IP address for each 3Com telephone and device.

• Some telephones are on separate subnetworks.

If you use a DHCP server, verify that the server has enough IP addresses to handle the number of telephones and devices on the separate subnet. If you connect a new telephone to the subnet, you must provide a means for the telephone to get the IP address of the NCP. You can configure DHCP option 184 on your DHCP server for this purpose.

You can manually define network settings for a telephone, including the NCP address, using the Local User Interface (LUI) utility, which resides on each telephone that has an LCD display, or the Telephone Local Configuration application (TLC), a program that you can install from the NBX Resource Pack CD. For more information on these tools, see Chapter 10, "Troubleshooting," in the NBX Administrator's Guide.

Using DHCP

A DHCP server can assign IP addresses to telephones from a predefined group of addresses. (The NCP must have a static IP address.) The DHCP server assigns these addresses for a fixed amount of time that depends on how the server is configured. At the end of the time period, if the device is still active and needs the IP address to continue operating, the DHCP server renews the same IP address for another time period. If the device is no longer active at the end of the time period, the DHCP server returns the IP address to the list of available addresses that can be allocated to requesting devices.

If your DHCP server can serve multiple subnets (by using a BOOTP Relay agent, also known as an IP helper address), you can provide IP settings (IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway address) for all of your system devices. However, each NBX device in the system requires the IP address of the NCP. If the device and the NCP are located on the same subnet, the device receives this information through status messages passed at the Ethernet layer. If the device and the NCP are located on different subnets, you can configure the DHCP server to pass the IP address of the NCP to the device. See <u>"Providing the NCP IP Address to Devices"</u> on page 154.

IP On-the-FlyThe NBX system must be configured differently in each of the following IPConfigurationOn-the-Fly situations:

• All telephones and devices are on the same subnet as the NCP.

You do not need to use IP in this environment. Devices always use Ethernet (Layer 2) communications, and the NCP never needs to give out an IP address.

• Some telephones are on separate subnets.

If you use a DHCP server, verify that the server has enough IP addresses to handle the number of telephones and devices in the NBX system. Optionally, you can configure the DHCP server to pass the IP address of the NCP to DHCP client devices. For an example, see Appendix C, "Configuring Option 184 on a Windows 2000 DHCP Server," in the NBX Administrator's Guide.

If you are not using DHCP, you must use the NBX NetSet utility to configure a block of IP addresses for use by IP On-the-Fly devices, and configure the NCP's IP address into each telephone that will be located on a remote subnet.

Devices on the same subnet as the NCP are given an IP address only if they need to communicate with a device that is on a different subnet. See <u>"Configuring IP On-the-Fly"</u> on page 156.



3C10165D E1 and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support the NBX IP On-the Fly feature. If your system uses IP On-the-Fly, then you must assign a static IP address to the card or use DHCP to assign an IP address to the card, even if the card will be installed on the same subnet as the NCP.

Providing the NCP IP Address to Devices

To provide the IP address of the NCP to devices on other subnetworks, use one of these methods:

Program the IP address of the NCP directly into each telephone using the telephone key pad. For devices that do not have an LCD display panel, such at the 3100 Entry Telephone, you can use the Telephone Local Configuration application, which you can install on a computer from the NBX Resource Pack CD. See Chapter 10, Troubleshooting, in the NBX Administrator's Guide for instructions on how to use these tools.

| I | | Program a custom DHCP option on the DHCP server and configure the server to pass the IP address of the NCP to remote devices through the standard DHCP configuration process. |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
| | i | 3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP option 184. If your DHCP server is set up to use option 184, you must still manually configure these digital line cards. See the NBX Administrator's Guide for more information. |
| | | RFC 2132 (DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions) defines vendor specific options that allow you to configure the server to send locally defined information to DHCP clients. NBX system devices support option 184. If you create and activate option 184 on your DHCP server, and use it to specify the IP address of the NCP, you do not need to manually configure the address on the NBX devices. For an example of how to configure a DHCP server for option 184, see Appendix C, "Configuring Option 184 on a Windows 2000 DHCP Server" in the <i>NBX</i> <i>Administrator's Guide.</i> |
| I | Configuring IP Telephony | Setting up IP telephony is the same whether you are installing the NBX system for the first time or adding IP to an existing system. The steps for setting up IP telephony are covered in these sections: |
| | | <u>Selecting the Operating Mode</u> |
| | | <u>Configuring IP On-the-Fly</u> |
| | | Configuring the DHCP Server |
| | | Manually Configuring Telephone IP Settings |
| | Selecting the Operating Mode | To select the IP operating mode: |
| | 1 | Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password. |
| | 2 | In the NBX NetSet - Main Menu window, click System Configuration. |
| | 3 | In the System Configuration window, click the System Settings tab. |
| | 4 | Click <i>System-wide</i> . The System Configuration - System Settings dialog box appears. |
| | 5 | Select the appropriate entry from the Network Protocol list. The choices: |
| | | Ethernet Only — Layer 2. |

I

I

- Standard IP Every device requires an IP address. Either use DHCP or manually assign the IP addresses.
- IP On-the-Fly The NCP provides IP addresses as needed to local devices. Remote devices obtain IP addresses from the DHCP server, or you can manually program their IP addresses.



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support the NBX IP On-the Fly feature. If your system uses IP On-the-Fly, then you must assign a static IP address to the card or use DHCP to assign an IP address to the card, even if the card will be installed on the same subnet as the NCP.

6 Click OK.

Configuring IPBefore you configure IP On-the-Fly, consider how many addresses you
need.

The number of addresses needed depends on the number of devices that are likely to use IP communications at one time and in one device location. For example, if you have twelve devices (four line card ports and eight telephones) on the NCP subnetwork, and four telephones on other subnetworks, the number of IP addresses required depends on the activity on the system.

If an external telephone call arrives on one of the line card ports and the call is intended for one of the *remote* telephones, then the line card port needs an IP address to participate in the call and obtains one from the IP On-the-Fly address pool. The remote telephone needs an IP address too. However, the remote telephone cannot obtain an IP address from the IP On-the-Fly pool of addresses because it is not on the same subnet as the NCP. If the remote telephone does not already have an IP address, either assigned by a DHCP server or manually programmed through the telephone buttons, it cannot participate in the call.

If an external telephone call arrives on one of the line card ports and the call is intended for one of the *local* telephones, neither the line card port nor the telephone require an IP address. Both can communicate at the Ethernet layer (Layer 2).

After you determine the range of IP addresses that you need, configure IP On-the-Fly:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click System Configuration.
- 3 Click IP Addresses.
- **4** In the *IP Addresses* dialog box, click *Add*. The Add Dynamic IP Address dialog box appears.
- **5** Specify an address range, and then click *OK*.

Configuring the DHCP Server If you choose to use DHCP, contact your network administrator to configure the DHCP server. For an example, see Appendix C, "Configuring Option 184 on a Windows 2000 DHCP Server," in the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP option 184. Before you install a 3C10165D E1 or 3C10116D T1 card at a site that is remote from the system's NCP, you must first initialize the card by connecting it to the same subnet as the NCP.



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP lease times of less than 20 minutes.

Manually Configuring Telephone IP Settings

For a telephone to work properly on a subnet separated from the NCP, you must configure three IP settings (IP address, default gateway, and subnet mask). You can use the NBX NetSet utility to manually configure the settings, or you can enter the settings directly from the telephone key pad.

To configure telephone IP settings with the NBX NetSet utility:

1 Connect the telephone to the same subnet as the NCP.



If the telephone has not already been discovered by the NCP, go to the System Configuration - System Settings *window and enable* Auto Discover Telephones.

- **2** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator name and password.
- **3** In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.

- 4 Click the Telephones tab.
- **5** Select the telephone from the *Telephones* list.
- **6** Click *IP Settings*. The Modify IP Settings dialog box appears. (The IP Settings button does not appear unless you have enabled IP for the system.)
- 7 In the *IP Settings* dialog box, specify the IP settings for this device. The IP Settings dialog box shows two groups of IP settings:
 - IP Settings Reported by Device Typically, if you are configuring a new telephone, you see 0.0.0.0 in each of the IP address, Default Gateway, and Subnet Mask fields. Note that if a telephone has an IP address, default gateway, and subnet mask, you cannot change those values using the NBX NetSet utility.
 - Manually Assigned IP Settings Use these fields to configure the IP settings for the telephone. You can change an IP setting only if the corresponding field under IP Settings Reported by Device is 0.0.0.0. If the field contains a value other than 0.0.0.0, you can change the value only through the telephone buttons. See the next section.



Manually assigned settings take precedence over settings assigned automatically by DHCP. If you manually enter the IP settings for a telephone using the telephone key pad, these settings replace any settings supplied by a DHCP server, and the telephone no longer searches for a DHCP server when it is plugged into a network.

8 Click OK.

The Ethernet (Layer 2) communications between the NCP and the telephone ensure that the telephone receives the IP address of the NCP as part of the configuration.

You can program IP configuration directly into a telephone using the telephone Local User Interface (LUI) utility, or, for devices that do not have display panel, such as a 3100 Entry Telephone, you can use the Telephone Local Configuration application For detailed instructions on how to use these tools, see the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.

Automatically Configuring Telephone IP Settings

When you connect a 3Com Telephone to a network, it searches for a DHCP server. If the telephone is on the same subnet as the NCP, the telephone receives the following configuration information from the NCP:

- The IP settings (IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway address) for the telephone to use
- The IP address of the NCP

The telephone then stops searching for a DHCP sever.

If a telephone is on a different subnet than the NCP and a DHCP server provides IP settings to the telephone, the telephone cannot communicate with the NCP until it has the NCP IP address. There are two methods of providing the NCP IP address to the telephone:

- Manually configure the NCP IP address into the telephone using the telephone LUI utility. See <u>"Manually Configuring Telephone IP</u> <u>Settings"</u> on page 157.
- Provide the IP address to the telephone using DHCP option 184. For an example of how to configure option 184 on a DHCP server, see Appendix C, "Configuring Option 184 on a Windows 2000 DHCP Server," in the NBX Administrator's Guide.



The methods for configuring special options vary depending on the DHCP server, and the example in the NBX Administrator's Guide may not apply directly to your DHCP server. For assistance, contact your network administrator, the vendor of the DHCP server, or a qualified 3Com service representative.

Configuring Analog Line Card Ports

Typically, your analog line card ports reside on the same subnetwork as the NCP. If you use IP On-the-Fly, or if you use Standard IP with DHCP, IP configuration is automatic. Verify that your server has enough addresses. However, if you are using Standard IP without DHCP, you must manually configure the IP settings for each line card port.

To manually configure IP settings for line card ports:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 If you have not already done so, use the Auto Discover feature to add line card ports to the configuration database. For more information see "Configuring a Line Card Port" in the *NBX Administrator's Guide*.

- 3 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- 4 Click the *Line Card Ports* tab and select a line card port from the list.
- 5 Click IP Settings.
- 6 In the *IP Settings* dialog box, specify the IP configuration for this device.
- 7 Click OK.

Configuring T1, E1, If all digital line cards reside on the same subnetwork as the NCP, and you are using IP On-the-Fly or Standard IP and DHCP, IP configuration is automatic. If you are using Standard IP without DHCP, you must manually configure the IP settings for T1, E1, and ISDN BRI cards.

3C10165D E1 cards and 3C10116D T1 cards can be installed in a remote location and communicate with the NCP over a routed network. For information on how to configure these cards for remote operation, see the NBX Administrator's Guide.



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP option 184. Before you install a 3C10165D E1 or 3C10116D T1 card at a site that is remote from the system's NCP, you must first initialize the card by connecting it to the same subnet as the NCP



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support the NBX IP On-the Fly feature. If your system uses IP On-the-Fly, then you must assign a static IP address to the card or use DHCP to assign an IP address to the card, even if the card will be installed on the same subnet as the NCP.



3C10165D E1 Digital Line Cards and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Cards do not support DHCP lease times of less than 20 minutes.

To manually configure channel IP addresses:

- **1** Log in to the NBX NetSet utility using the administrator username and password.
- 2 If you have not already done so, use the Auto Discover feature or manual configuration to add the T1, E1, or ISDN BRI channels to the configuration database.
- 3 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- 4 Click the *Digital Line Cards* tab.

- 5 From the Select Device Type list, select T1/ISDN Board List.
- 6 In the board list select a board, and then click IP Settings.
- 7 To assign one IP address manually and have the NBX system assign the remaining addresses automatically, enter the first address in the *First IP Address* box. The system adds the remaining addresses sequentially when you apply the changes.

3C10165D E1 cards and 3C10116D T1 cards need only one IP address. Enter the IP address in the *First IP Address* box. The *Assign Addresses Individually* button does not appear when you are configuring 3C10165D E1 cards and 3C10116D T1 cards.

- **8** To assign IP addresses individually on digital line cards other than 3C10165D E1 cards and 3C10116D T1 cards, click *Assign Addresses Individually*.
 - **a** Specify an IP address for each channel.
 - **b** In the *Common Subnet Mask* and *Common Default Gateway* fields, enter IP values that are appropriate for your network.
 - c Click Ok.
- 9 In the IP Settings screen, click Apply.
- **10** Wait 3 minutes for the changes to take effect.
- **11** Verify your changes.
- **12** Click OK to close the dialog box.



You cannot configure ConneXtions ports in the IP Settings dialog box. See "ConneXtions H.323 Gateway" in the NBX Administrator's Guide for more information.

Low-bandwidth Telephony To support remote users, you can configure a 3Com Telephone to operate over a low-bandwidth link. For reliable audio, the link must support throughput of at least 64 Kbps. An example is a single B channel of a Basic Rate Interface (BRI) ISDN line or a single channel on a T1 line.

An ISDN connection is not the only method of connecting a remote telephone. The ability of NBX systems to operate in Ethernet (Layer 2) mode or IP (Layer 3) mode gives you several connection options such as cable modem, frame relay, and DSL. Your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner can help you to design a system to meet your needs.

You enable low-bandwidth communications in an NBX system at the device level using the NBX NetSet utility.

To enable low-bandwidth communication for a telephone:

- 1 In the NBX NetSet Main Menu window, click Device Configuration.
- 2 Click the *Telephones* tab. From the list of telephones, select the telephone that you want to configure for low-bandwidth operation.
- **3** Click *Modify*. The Modify Telephone dialog box appears.
- 4 Click the Set All For Low Bandwidth Connection Compression check box and then click OK.

A low-bandwidth telephone cannot play music on hold, initiate a page or participate in conference calls.



Although the NBX NetSet utility allows you to change the method used for compression, if you change the setting from the default, ADPCM to None, your system cannot support voice messaging services over low-bandwidth connections.

The rest of the configuration is done at the telephone and at the router. At the telephone, you specify the IP address of the NCP. See <u>"Manually</u> <u>Configuring Telephone IP Settings"</u> on <u>page 157</u>. When your low-bandwidth link is operational and connected to the NCP, the Auto Discover process can discover and configure the telephone, or you can manually configure it through the NBX NetSet utility.

You can operate with the link "always open" or you can set it up to autodial. With an autodial connection, when you lift the receiver on the telephone, the ISDN router or terminal adapter establishes the link to the NCP. In the other direction, a call to the extension of the remote telephone initiates the connection. To ensure that there is time to complete the call, you may need to modify the time-out values of the system. Consult your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner or a 3Com-qualified service technician for assistance.

The specific configuration tasks required for setting up the link between the NCP and the remote telephone depend on the type of equipment and the Telco/ISP that you use. For help in selecting equipment and configuring it, contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner or a 3Com-qualified support technician. After you enable low-bandwidth communication for a telephone, complete the configuration of the low-bandwidth IP connection:

- 1 Use the telephone key pad to configure IP settings on the telephone. See <u>"Manually Configuring Telephone IP Settings"</u> on <u>page 157</u> for more information.
- **2** Configure the telephone in the configuration database.

Broadband Telephony NBX system software (release R4.2 and higher) supports Network Address Port Translation (NAPT, also called NAT overloading). NAPT allows you to put an NBX Telephone behind a device that applies network address translation at a remote location, such as a home office, and connect to the NCP through an Internet connection. One typical configuration is to connect a cable/DSL modem to a small office/home office router that includes a firewall and Ethernet ports. You connect the NBX Telephone directly to one of the Ethernet ports. Another option is use the pcXset soft telephone application instead of an NBX Telephone.

This section summarizes the tasks you must complete to configure an NBX Telephone for operation behind the NAPT device. Because the configuration interface on each device varies, detailed procedures for NAPT device configuration are beyond the scope of this document. For information about configuring the NAPT device, see the documentation for that device.

To add a broadband connected telephone behind a NAPT device:

- 1 Make sure the NBX system is set up for IP operations, either Standard IP or IP On-the-Fly. If you are not using a VPN connection to establish access from your home system to the NBX system network, the NBX system must have a public IP address.
- 2 Use the NBX NetSet utility to enable *Auto Discover Telephones (System Configuration > System Settings > System-wide*) and then connect the NBX Telephone to the NBX system.

Auto discovering the telephone while it is connected locally to the NBX network allows the system to configure the phone in the database and assign an extension number. You could manually add the telephone to the database instead of using the Auto Discover feature.

3 Move the telephone to its intended location. Connect it to power and then use the telephone Local User Interface (LUI) utility to program these settings:

- NCP MAC address Required only when the network has more than one Network Call Processor.
- Telephone IP address A private IP address matching the IP address scheme on the LAN side of the NAPT device but outside of the DHCP address range configured in the NAPT device. The telephone must have a static IP address. For pcXset, this would be the IP address of the computer.
- NCP IP address The IP address of the NCP that the phone must communicate with. If you are not connecting to the network through a VPN connection, the NBX system must have a public IP address.
- Subnet Mask The address mask in use on the LAN side of the NAPT device.
- Default Gateway The IP address of the NAPT device on the LAN.

For details on how to start the LUI utility, see the NBX Administrator's Guide.

4 Configure the NAPT device:

Use the device's user interface to map UDP ports 2093-2096 to the NBX telephone IP address. These UDP ports are registered ports for NBX operations. This mapping feature, known as virtual server, port mapping, port range forwarding, or rules, is required to allow traffic to pass to and from the NBX Telephone.

10

TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter contains maintenance and troubleshooting information that can help you resolve simple problems. It covers these topics:

- <u>System-level Troubleshooting</u>
- <u>Connecting a Computer to an NCP</u>
- Servicing the Network Call Processor Battery
- <u>Getting Service and Support</u>

The SuperStack 3 NBX hardware needs no routine maintenance. However, you should perform periodic backups of the configuration database, especially after you make changes to system or user configurations.

System-level Troubleshooting

For each symptom listed in <u>Table 28</u>, perform the suggested actions in the order listed.



WARNING: Before you remove any component, shut down the system software and then turn off the power to the chassis. The NBX V3000 has a power switch on the back of the unit near the power cord. For the NBX 100 and SuperStack 3 NBX, you must remove the power cord. If the system has two power supplies (SuperStack 3 NBX only), remove both power cords.

| | Table 28 | Troubleshooting | Actions |
|--|----------|-----------------|---------|
|--|----------|-----------------|---------|

| Symptom | Possible Cause | Suggested Action |
|---|--|--|
| Date/time display on telephones is wrong, either incorrect date or | A power surge has corrupted the system time. If the display shows incorrect date, on NBX NetSet to reset the system time. display shows random characters, for example, 00; 0 #, you must: | |
| shows random characters. | | 1 Disconnect power to the chassis that holds the NCP. |
| | | 2 Wait 60 seconds. |
| | | 3 Reconnect power to the system. |
| | | 4 Use NBX NetSet to enter the correct date and time. |
| | Problem with Network NCP battery. | Contact your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner. |
| Your browser cannot connect to the NBX NetSet utility. | No IP connectivity | Verify that the computer you are using to run the browser has network connectivity. See <u>"Establishing IP Connectivity"</u> on page 80. |
| | Routing problems | If your local IP environment includes a proxy server, you might need to reconfigure your browser parameters to ignore the proxy server. See the Help for your browser. |

| Symptom | Possible Cause | Suggested Action |
|--|---|--|
| | Invalid IP configuration | The system has a default IP configuration which might need to be changed to match your local IP environment. Temporarily change the IP configuration of your computer so that the subnet configuration matches the system configuration. Specify 255.255.255.0 as the subnet and use IP address 192.168.1.191. After you change your computer's IP configuration, connect to the system and change its IP configuration to match the IP environment of your local network. Change your computer's IP configuration back to its original settings, and then connect to the NBX NetSet utility using the new IP address. See <u>"Establishing IP Connectivity"</u> on page 80 complete information. |
| Cannot open NBX NetSet using the administrator username and password. | The CAPS LOCK key on your keyboard is activated. | NBX NetSet username and passwords are case-sensitive. For example, NBX NetSet accepts "administrator" but it rejects "Administrator" and "ADMINISTRATOR". |
| Callers on hold do not hear music. | No music source is connected to the Call Processor. | See <u>"Adding External Hardware"</u> on page 99 for more information. |
| | MOH audio is disabled. | Enable MOH audio in NBX NetSet > System Configuration > System Settings > System-wide. See <u>"Connecting a</u> <u>Music-on-Hold (MOH) Input Device</u> on page 99. |
| | MOH volume is set too low. | Adjust the MOH volume on the device that is providing audio to the NBX system. The audio input should be max 2V peak to peak. |
| Lose date and time when rebooting the system. | Problem with the battery on the NCP. | See <u>"Servicing the Network Call Processor</u> <u>Battery</u> on <u>page 170</u> . |

 Table 28
 Troubleshooting Actions (continued)

| Symptom | Possible Cause | Suggested Action |
|--|---|--|
| NBX NetSet is very slow in responding. | Your network uses a proxy server for Internet access. | A common networking practice is to employ a proxy server to shield your network from intrusion by unauthorized users. However, communications with NBX NetSet do not need to pass through the proxy server. To speed access to NBX NetSet, configure your browser to access the NBX system without going through the proxy server. |
| All greetings and prompts are missing. For example, calling the Auto Attendant or a user's mailbox produces silence instead of the expected | The wrong message compression format was selected. | Prior to R1.1.0, all audio used MuLaw compression. With R1.1.0, audio, that is, any prompt, message, or greeting, was recorded using ADPCM compression. If you are running R1.1.0 or higher, you must leave the compression format set to ADPCM. The ability to select the format allows you to migrate existing data into an older database for backwards compatibility. |
| greetings. | | In release R2.6 and all later releases, the compression is set to ADPCM and you cannot change it. |
| Caller ID information is not appearing | Your local telephone company is not providing Caller ID service to you. | Caller ID is typically an optional service which you must order from your telephone company. |
| when an outside call arrives. | | You may be able to see caller ID by number or by name (or both) depending on the service your telephone company provides. |
| | You are answering the telephone before the Caller ID information is fully received. | Caller ID information does not appear immediately. It usually appears between the first and second rings. If you answer the call too quickly, the information is never received. |

Table 28 Troubleshooting Actions (continued)

Connecting a Computer to an NCP

You can connect a computer directly to an NBX Network Call Processor and access CLI commands and system status messages through a terminal emulation program. Typically, direct access to the NCP is for maintenance and troubleshooting purposes and should be done only under the direction of a support technician.

You can connect a computer directly to these NBX devices:

Table 29Serial Port Connections

| Card | Port |
|--|--------------------|
| NBX NCP | CONSOLE or COM1 |
| BRI-ST Digital Line Card | CONSOLE |
| E1 Digital Line Card | CONSOLE |
| T1 Digital Line Card | CONSOLE |
| NBX Analog Line Card (3C10114C only) | CONSOLE |
| NBX Analog Terminal Card (3C10117C only) | CONSOLE |
| NBX Analog Terminal Adapter (3C10400 only) | 10101 |
| 3Com 3105 Attendant Console | Serial |



To connect to the serial port on a 3Com 3105 Attendant Console, you must use a DB9 (female)-to-RJ-45 adapter.

It does not matter which computer operating system you use. As long as the computer has a terminal emulation program that can emulate a VT100 terminal (for example, Microsoft Hyperterminal), it can communicate with any of the cards listed in <u>Table 29</u>.

To connect the computer to the COM1 or CONSOLE port:

- 1 Using a standard computer serial cable (9-pin male to 9-pin female), connect the male end of the cable to the female connector (COM1 or CONSOLE) on the front panel of the board.
- **2** Connect the female end of the cable to an available serial port on the computer.
- **3** Start the terminal emulation software and create a new connection.
- **4** Configure the connection to use the serial port to which you connected the cable and to use the settings in <u>Table 30</u>.

| Property | Value |
|--------------|-------|
| Emulation | VT100 |
| Baud Rate | 9600 |
| Data bits | 8 |
| Parity | None |
| Stop bits | 1 |
| Flow control | None |

Table 30 Terminal Emulation Program Properties

All messages that associated with the board (for example, the initialization process) appear in the terminal emulation window.

| Servicing the Network Call Processor Battery | If you lose the system date and time when you reboot an NBX system, it could mean that the NCP battery must be replaced. The battery is not a user-serviceable item. If you suspect a problem with the battery, contact your 3Com Technical Support representative. |
|--|--|
| <u>Í</u> | WARNING: There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions. |
| Getting Service and Support | Your authorized 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner can assist you with all of your support needs, including systems and cable plant design, installation, configuration, and project management. |
| | A choice of maintenance services, including remote diagnostics, on-site support, telephone technical support, and hardware replacement, is available from your 3Com NBX Voice-Authorized Partner. Training and enhancement services are also available. |

SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications for NBX hardware:

- NBX V3000 Call Processor
- SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Call Processor
- SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis
- NBX 100 Call Processor
- NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis
- NBX Analog Line Cards
- NBX Analog Terminal Cards
- NBX Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA)
- NBX BRI-ST Digital Line Card
- NBX E1 and T1 Digital Line Cards
- NBX Hub Card
- <u>NBX Uplink Card</u>
- <u>3Com 3102 Business Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephones</u>
- <u>3Com 1102 Business Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephones</u>
- <u>3Com 2101 Basic Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 3105 Attendant Console</u>
- <u>3Com 1105 Attendant Console</u>
- <u>3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 3107C Cordless Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 3103 Manager's Telephone</u>
- <u>3Com 3100 Entry Telephone</u>

| Government Approvals | The 3Com [®] Networked Telephony Solutions are in compliance with the industry standards listed in this section. |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Safety | IEC60950 Edition 3 (plus all national deviations) EN60950 1992 / A11: 1997 (plus ZB & ZC deviations) UL 60950-1 CSA 22.2#950 3rd Edition AS/NZS 3260 |
| EMC Emissions | EN55022, CISPR22, AS/NZS3548, FCC Part 15, ICES-003 (Class A) |
| EMC Immunity | EN55024 IEC61000-4-2 Electrostatic discharge IEC61000-4-3 Radiated immunity IEC61000-4-4 Fast transients IEC61000-4-5 Surge IEC61000-4-6 Conducted immunity IEC61000-4-8 Magnetic IEC61000-4-11 Dips and interruptions |
| European Community CE Notice | |
| Other Approvals | EN61000-3-2 Harmonic emission EN61000-3-3 Flicker CTR3/A1 BRI Interface CTR4/A1 PRI Interface ACA TS031 Australian BRI Interface ACA TS038 Australian PRI Interface FCC Part 68 |

NBX V3000 The NBX V3000 Call Processor includes the box, fans, one power supply, **Call Processor** backplane, and mounting brackets. See Figure 1 on page 22 for information about NBX V3000 connectors and status lights. Table 31 NBX V300 Call Processor Specifications Weight 5.45 kg (12 lbs.) Dimensions H: 42 mm (1.6 in.) W: 440 mm (17.3 in.) D: 355 mm (14 in.) Compliance This is an FCC Class A device. Electrical 100-240VAC @ 2.2A, 50-60Hz Environmental Ambient temperature: 0 to 50 ×C (32 to 122 ×F) Humidity: 10% to 90% noncondensing Vibration and shock: EN 60068 (IEC 68);

SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Call Processor

The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Call Processor includes the box, fans, one or two power supplies, backplane, and mounting brackets. It can accommodate a second drive for disk mirroring.

 Table 32
 SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Call Processor Specifications

| Weight | As Shipped (One disk): 9.1 kg (20 lbs.) |
|---------------|---|
| | With two disks: 10.5 kg (23 lbs.) |
| Dimensions | H: 133 mm (5.24 in.) |
| | W: 440 mm (17.3 in.) |
| | D: 320 mm (12.6 in.) |
| Compliance | This is an FCC Class A device. |
| Controls | Music on Hold level adjustment (controls the gain of the input circuit for the Music on Hold function). |
| Electrical | 100-240VAC @ 2.2A, 50-60Hz |
| | Optional: Second power supply |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 to 40 °C (32 to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |
| 3C10201 | Call Processor, single power supply, 250-device license |
| 3C10202 | Call Processor, dual power supplies, 250-device license |

SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis

The SuperStack 3 NBX V5000 Chassis includes the metal box, fans and power supply, backplane, and mounting brackets.

| Table 33 | 3C10200 and 3C10200B Super | rStack 3 NBX Chassis Specifications |
|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|

| Weight | Empty: 6 kg (13.2 lbs) |
|---------------|--|
| Dimensions | H: 133 mm (5.24 in.) |
| | W: 440 mm (17.3 in.) |
| | D: 320 mm (12.6 in.) |
| Compliance | This is an FCC Class A device. |
| Electrical | 100-240VAC @ 2.2A, 50-60Hz |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 to 40 °C (32 to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |
| 4 Slots | For NBX interface cards |

NBX 100 Call Processor

The NBX 100 Call Processor must reside in the top slot in an NBX 6-Slot chassis.

Table 34 3C10110C, 3C10110D NBX 100 Call Processor

| Weight | 1 lb 2 oz (510 gm) |
|---------------|--|
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 32 °F to 104 °F (0 °C to 40 °C) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |
| Controls | Music on Hold level adjustment (adjustable, controls the gain of the input circuit for the music-on-hold function). |
| Connectors | 10BASE2 port BNC male connector for external hub connection (BNC connector discontinued on 3C10110D) |
| | RJ-45 10BASE-T DCE port for external hub connection |
| | RS-232, DB9 DTE connector (serial port) |
| | RS-232, DB9 DCE connector (serial port) |
| | 3.5 mm Audio input jack for line-level audio |
| | RJ-11 Ext. Alert (Reserved for future use). |
| | RJ-11 Paging (Line-out 600-ohm audio interface with a dry contact closure for use with an external paging amplifier.) |
| | Pin 1 - Not Connected Pin 2 - Relay common Pin 3 - Ring Pin 4 - Tip Pin 5 - Relay Contact Pin 6 - Not connected |

| NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis | The NBX 100 6-Slot chassis includes the fan, power supply, disk drive, backplane, and mounting brackets. Table 35 3C10111C NBX 100 6-Slot Chassis Specifications | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| | | | |
| | Weight | Empty: 22 lb (9.9 kg) | |
| | | Configured: 30 lb (13.5 kg) | |
| | Dimensions | H: 10.5 in. (264.7 mm) W: 17.3 in. (431.8 mm) D: 9.0 in. (225.6 mm) | |
| | Electrical | US and Canada: 115/230 VAC @ 4/2 A, 60/50 Hz | |
| | Environmental | Ambient temperature: 32 °F to 104 °F (0 °C to 40 °C) | |
| | | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing | |
| Cards | company's CO lii | nes. There are two models of the Analog Line Card. | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> | nes. There are two models of the Analog Line Card, <u>36</u>) and 3C10114C (<u>Table 37</u>). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> | <u>36</u>) and 3C10114C (<u>Table 37</u>). | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government | 36) and 3C10114C (<u>Table 37</u>). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight | 36) and 3C10114C (<u>Table 37</u>). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government | 36) and 3C10114C (Table 37). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) FCC Part 68 FCC registration numbers: | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government | 36) and 3C10114C (Table 37). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) FCC Part 68 FCC registration numbers: SSAUSA-25639-PF-TQ Fully protected PBX: | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government | 36) and 3C10114C (Table 37). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) FCC Part 68 FCC registration numbers: SSAUSA-25639-PF-TQ Fully protected PBX: SSAUSA-25639-MF-T Fully protected multifunction systems: | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government | 36) and 3C10114C (Table 37). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) FCC Part 68 FCC registration numbers: SSAUSA-25639-PF-TQ Fully protected PBX: SSAUSA-25639-MF-T Fully protected multifunction systems: SSAUSA-25639-KF-T Fully protected key telephone system: FCC Part 15 Class A | |
| Cards | 3C10114 (<u>Table</u> Table 36 3C101 Weight Government approvals | 36) and 3C10114C (Table 37). 14 NBX Analog Line Card Specifications 510 gm (18 oz) FCC Part 68 FCC registration numbers: SSAUSA-25639-PF-TQ Fully protected PBX: SSAUSA-25639-MF-T Fully protected multifunction systems: SSAUSA-25639-KF-T Fully protected key telephone system: FCC Part 15 Class A REN: 0.2 A per line jack Connects up to four Loop Start PSTN telephone lines via | |

| Weight | 510 gm (18 oz) |
|------------------------------|---|
| Government | FCC Part 68 |
| approvals | FCC registration numbers: SSAUSA-25639-PF-TQ |
| | Fully Protected PBX SSAUSA-25639-MF-T |
| | Fully Protected Multifunction Systems SSAUSA-25639-KF-T |
| | Fully Protected Key Telephone System FCC Part 15 Class A |
| | CE: This product complies with the requirements of European Directive 1995/5/EC |
| | Emissions |
| | IECS-003 Class A |
| | FCC Part 15 Class A |
| | EN 55022 Class A |
| | AS/NZS 3548 Class A |
| | EN61000-3-2 |
| | EN61000-3-3 |
| | CNS 13438 Class A |
| Facility Interface Code | 02LS2 |
| Service Organization Code | 9.0 F |
| REN | 0.2 A |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 10% to 90% noncondensing |

 Table 37
 3C10114C NBX Analog Line Card Specifications

NBX Analog Terminal Cards

The Analog Terminal Card is an optional card. It enables you to connect up to four analog components, such analog phones or fax machines, to an NBX system.



CAUTION: The NBX Analog Terminal Card is not intended to connect directly to any telephone network.

 Table 38
 3C10117 Analog Terminal Card Specifications

| Connectors | RJ-11. Connects up to four analog devices to the NBX system |
|---------------|---|
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |

Table 39 3C10117C Analog Terminal Card Specifications

| Connectors | RJ-11. Connects up to four analog devices to the NBX system |
|---------------|---|
| | Serial port (CONSOLE) for diagnostic access |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 10% to 90% noncondensing |

NBX Analog The Terminal Adapter ana (ATA) syst

The Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) enables you to connect a single analog device, such as a cordless telephone or fax machine, to an NBX system (<u>Table 40</u>). The 3C10400 ATA can accept power from an IEEE 802.3af-compliant (Power over Ethernet) power supply.

Table 40 3C10120B, 3C10400 ATA Specifications

| Connectors | Standard RJ-11 port |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | Standard RJ-45 port |
| | Hub port for additional Ethernet component |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |
| PoE Power Rating (3C10400 only) | Class 3 |

NBX BRI-ST DigitalThe BRI-ST DigitalLine CardNBX system three

The BRI-ST Digital Line Card enables you to connect a BRI-ST line to an NBX system through an NBX expansion chassis.

Table 41 3C10164-ST BRI-ST Digital Line Card Specifications

| Weight | 455 gm (1 lb) |
|---------------|---|
| Connectors | Four RJ-45 connectors (one for each BRI-ST line) and one serial diagnostic port |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |

NBX E1 and T1 Digital Line Cards

The E1 and T1 Digital Line Cards enable you to connect an E1 or T1 line to an NBX system.

Table 42 3C10165D E1 and 3C10116D T1 Digital Line Card Specifications

| Weight | 397 gm (14 oz) |
|---------------|--|
| Connectors | One RJ-45 connector for 10BASE-T line |
| | One RJ-45 connector for T1/E1 line |
| | Serial port (CONSOLE) for diagnostic access |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |

NBX Hub Card

The NBX Hub Card has been replaced by the NBX Uplink Card.

Table 43 3C10115 NBX Hub Card Specifications

| Weight | 397 gm (14 oz) |
|---------------|--|
| Connectors | Eight RJ-45 connectors for 10BASE-T lines One BNC male connector for 10BASE2 coaxial line |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing |

NBX Uplink Card

The uplink card is an optional component.

 Table 44
 3C10370 NBX Uplink Card Specifications

| Weight | 397 gm (14 oz) | |
|---------------|--|--|
| Connectors | Eight RJ-45 connectors for 10BASE-T lines | |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing | |



WARNING: 3Com Telephones are intended for connection only on internal Local Area Networks. Do not install them outside of buildings. Do not connect them to any networking device outside of the building in which the telephones are located.

3Com 3102 Business Telephone Business Telephone 18 programmable buttons, 8 dedicated feature buttons, and a 10/100 Mbps switch port. 3Com 3102 Business Telephones can accept power from an IEEE 802.3af-compliant (Power over Ethernet) power supply.

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|------------------|--|-------------------|
| Electrical | 3C10226A-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing | |
| Weight | 1061 gm (2lb 6oz) | |
| Dimensions | 27 x 23 x 11 cm (10.6 x 9.1 x 4.3 in) | |
| PoE Power Rating | Class 2 | |
| | | |

 Table 45
 3Com 3102 Business Telephone Specifications

3Com 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephones

The 3Com 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephones include a 2 x 24 character display, 18 programmable buttons, 10 dedicated feature buttons, and a 10/100 Mbps switch port. The 2102-IR telephone has an infra-red port that allows you to use a personal digital assistant (for example, a Palm PDA) to exchange data with the phone. 3Com 2102 series telephones that have "PE" in the part number, for example, 3C10226PE, can accept power from an 802.3af-compliant (Power over Ethernet) power supply.

Table 46 3Com 2102 and 2102-IR Business Telephone

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Electrical | | |
| 2102 | 3C10226A-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10226A-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| 2102-IR | 3C10228IRA-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10228IRA-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10228IRA-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10228IRA-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10228IRA-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10228IRA-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 ° | C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondens | sing |

3Com 1102 Business Telephone

The 3Com 1102 Business Telephone includes 18 programmable buttons, 10 dedicated feature buttons, a 2 x 16 display, and a 10 Mbps hub port.

Table 47 3Com 1102 Business Telephone Specifications

| Weight | 1.8 kg (4 lbs) |
|------------|--------------------|
| Compliance | FCC Class A device |
| Electrical | 3C10121-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| | 3C10121-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10121-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10121-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10121-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10121-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing | |

 Table 47
 3Com 1102 Business Telephone Specifications (continued)

3Com 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephones

The 3Com 3101 and 3101SP Basic Telephones includes a 2 x 24 character display, four programmable buttons, and a 10/100 Mbps switch port.

 Table 48
 3Com 3101 Basic Telephone Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|------------------|---|--|
| Electrical | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-AA Australia: 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-CN China: 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-ME Mainland Europe: 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-SA South Africa: 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-UK United Kingdom: 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10410A, 3C10410SPA-US North America: 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W | |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing | |
| Weight | 870 gm (1lb 15oz) | |
| Dimensions | 21 x 22 x 11 cm (8.3 x 8.7 x 4.3 in) | |
| PoE Power Rating | Class 1 | |

3Com 2101The 3Com 2101 Basic Telephone includes a 2 x 24 character display, three
programmable buttons, and a 10/100 Mbps switch port.

Table 49 3Com 2101 Basic Telephone Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| Electrical | 3C10248A-AA Australia: 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10248A-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10248A-ME Mainland Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10248A-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10248A-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10248A-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% nonconden: | sing |

3Com 3105 Attendant Console

The 3Com 3105 Attendant Console supports up to 100 functions with status LED display (50 buttons, each with high/low shift position). It operates at 10Mbps, in half duplex mode.

Table 50 3Com 3105 Attendant Console Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|------------------|---|----------------------|
| Electrical | 3C10224-AA Australia: 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | 3C10224-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10224-ME Mainland Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10224-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10224-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10224-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 | °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% nonconden | sing |
| Weight | 792 gm (1lb 15oz) | |
| Dimensions | 26 x 19 x 8 cm (10.3 x 7.5 x 3.2 in) | |
| PoE Power Rating | Class 1 | |

3Com 1105 The 3Com 1105 Attendant Console supports up to 100 functions with **Attendant Console** status LED display (50 buttons, each with high/low shift position). It operates at 10Mbps, in half duplex mode. Table 51 3Com 1105 Attendant Console Specifications Compliance FCC Class A device Electrical 3C10223-AA Australia: 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W 3C10223-CN China: 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W 3C10223-ME Mainland Europe: 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W 3C10223-SA South Africa: 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W 3C10223-UK United Kingdom: 3C10223-US North America: 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W Environmental Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 °C (32 °F to 104 °F) Humidity: 5% to 85% noncondensing

3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone

The 3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone is a high performance 900MHz narrow band FM device.

Table 52 3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class B device |
|---------------------------|---|
| RF Characteristics | Frequency: 902-905 MHz and 925-928 MHz |
| | Bandwidth: ±30KHz |
| | Transmit Power: .4mW approx. |
| | Method: Narrow Band FM |
| Base station | Dimensions: 108 mm (4 1/4 in) x 57.1 mm (2 1/4 in) x 193.5 mm (7 5/8 in) |
| | Weight: 334.5 gm (11.8 oz) |
| Handset | 50. 8 mm (2 in) x 139.7 mm (5 1/2 in) x 31.75 mm (1 1/4 in) without antenna |
| | 147.4 gm (5.2 oz) with battery |
| Desktop Charger | Dimensions: 82.55 mm (3 1/4 in) x 55 mm (2 1/6 in) x 89 mm (3 1/2 in) |
| | Weight: 70.9 gm (2.5 oz) |

 Table 52
 3Com 3106C Cordless Telephone Specifications (continued)

| Battery | Type: 3.6V 750mAh nickel metal hydride rechargeable |
|---------|--|
| | Battery pack charging time: 5-6 hours max. to full charge |
| | Battery pack duration: Up to 7 hours talk time; up to 5 days standby |

3Com 3107C Cordless Telephone

The 3Com 3107C Cordless Telephone is a high performance 900MHz narrow band FM device.

 Table 53
 3Com 3107C Cordless Telephone Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class B device |
|---------------------------|---|
| RF Characteristics | Frequency: 902-905 MHz and 925-928 MHz |
| | Bandwidth: ±30KHz |
| | Transmit Power: .4mW approx. |
| | Method: Narrow Band FM |
| Base station | Dimensions: 108 mm (4 1/4 in) x 57.1 mm (2 1/4 in) x 193.5 mm (7 5/8 in) |
| | Weight: 334.5 gm (11.8 oz) |
| Handset | 50. 8 mm (2 in) x 139.7 mm (5 1/2 in) x 31.75 mm (1 1/4 in) without antenna |
| | 147.4 gm (5.2 oz) with battery |
| Desktop Charger | Dimensions: 82.55 mm (3 1/4 in) x 55 mm (2 1/6 in) x 89 mm (3 1/2 in) |
| | Weight: 70.9 gm (2.5 oz) |
| Battery | Type: 3.6V 750mAh nickel metal hydride rechargeable |
| | Battery pack charging time: 5-6 hours max. to full charge |
| | Battery pack duration: Up to 7 hours talk time; up to 5 days standby |

| 3Com 3103 Manager's Telephone | device with a larg | The 3Com 3103 Manager's Telephone is a multi-line PoE-compatible device with a large display panel. | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|----------------------|--|
| | Table 54 3Com 3 ² | Table 54 3Com 3103 Manager's Telephone Specifications | | |
| | Compliance | FCC Class A device | | |
| | Electrical | 3C10403A-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | | 3C10403A-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | | 3C10403A-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | | 3C10403A-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | | 3C10403A-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W | |
| | | 3C10403A-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W | |
| | Power | 10 W | | |
| | Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 | °C (32 °F to 104 °F) | |
| | | Humidity: 5% to 85% nonconder | nsing | |
| | Weight | 1210 gm (2lb 9oz) | | |
| | Dimensions | 28.6 x 20.3 x 6.4 cm (11.25 x 8 x | 2.5 in) | |
| | PoE Power Rating | Class 3 | | |
| | | | | |

3Com 3100 Entry Telephone

The 3Com 3100 Entry Telephone is a single-line PoE-compatible device with no display panel.

 Table 55
 3Com 3100 Entry Telephone Specifications

| Compliance | FCC Class A device | |
|------------------|--|----------------------|
| Electrical | 3C10399A-AA Australia: | 240VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10399A-CN China: | 220VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10399A-ME Europe: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10399A-SA South Africa: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10399A-UK United Kingdom: | 230VAC, 50Hz, 13W |
| | 3C10399A-US North America: | 120VAC, 60Hz, 13W |
| Power | 3.0 W | |
| Environmental | Ambient temperature: 0 °C to 40 | °C (32 °F to 104 °F) |
| | Humidity: 5% to 85% nonconden | sing |
| Weight | 620 gm (1lb 4oz) | |
| Dimensions | 15.9 x 15.9 x 4.5 cm (6.25 x 6.25 x 1.75 in) | |
| PoE Power Rating | Class 1 | |

186 APPENDIX A: SPECIFICATIONS

CIRCUIT PROVISIONING

This appendix describes the circuit provisioning requirements for analog telephone lines, T1 lines, and for ISDN PRI services on T1 lines. It contains the following topics:

- <u>Caller ID Choices for Analog Lines</u>
- <u>T1 Prerequisites</u>
- <u>T1 Recommendations</u>
- ISDN PRI Prerequisites
- ISDN PRI Recommendations
- ISDN BRI Prerequisites
- ISDN BRI Recommendations

Caller ID Choices for Analog Lines When you order analog telephone lines from your telephone service provider, you can also order caller ID service. Your telephone service provider can tell you the format in which they provide caller ID

You can configure your NBX system to work with any of these formats:

- Bellcore GR-30-CORE
- ETSI FSK

information.

- ETSI DTMF
- British Telecom SIN 242
- NTT Telephone Interface Services

See the *NBX Administrator's Guide* for information on how to configure Analog Line Card ports for the caller ID format you want to use.

B

| T1 Prerequisites | All contact information <i>must</i> be available at time of installation, including telephone numbers and appropriate account representative contact information from the client's carrier. |
|-----------------------|--|
| T1 Recommendations | If the client is using standard (DS1) T1 lines, 3Com recommends that the circuits from the T1 provider meet the following criteria: |
| | Framing Type — Use either ESF with B8ZS. |
| | Zero Code Suppression — Use D4 with AMI. |
| | Signaling — E&M/Wink is required. |
| | Start Type — Wink Start is required. |
| i | Some Central Offices that use a DMS 100 switch may configure T1 circuits with an option to provide outbound dial tone. This configuration does not provide a wink for outbound calls. The NBX system does not need dial tone as it provides its own. Verify that the outbound channels are configured for Wink Start. |
| | Line Hunting — Obtain from the telephone company the method they use to hunt for an available channel on the T1 span. The NBX system typically searches downward from high-numbered channels when trying to place an outgoing call. If the telephone company searches upward from low-numbered channels for calls to the NBX system, conflicts are avoided. |
| | Circuit Type — 4-wire is required. |
| | DID Applications — When using DID or DNIS, 3Com recommends ordering telephone numbers that easily fit into the NBX system numbering plan. Although the numbering plan is extremely flexible, it is far easier to use if you have 3 or 4 digit DID\DNIS codes. This allows for a simple dial plan implementation. |
| | For 3-digit internal extensions, try to use the 100-499 range. Have the carrier provide the corresponding three digits for the DID\DNIS numbers/code. For 4-digit extensions, ask for the 1000-4999 range and request that the carrier use corresponding four digits for the DID/DNIS Numbers/code. |
| | For Caller-ID type services, the carrier <i>must support</i> in-band ANI. |

For more information, see <u>"Ordering DID (Direct Inward Dialing)</u> <u>Services for T1"</u> on <u>page 146</u>.

| | CSU — An external CSU (Channel Service Unit) is required with each T1 installation. Many CSUs support conversion of ESF (with B8ZS) services into D4 (with AMI). In some locations it may be easier to order the T1 as ESF with B8ZS and perform the conversion in the CSU. You must verify that the CSU supports this conversion. |
|-----------------------------|--|
| ISDN PRI Prerequisites | Before you install and configure ISDN PRI services on T1 circuits, gather the following information and have it available at the time of installation: |
| | All telephone numbers to be activated |
| | PRI circuit ID |
| | Carrier's testing department name and telephone numbers |
| | Carrier's circuit provisioning department names and numbers |
| | Carrier's account representative account information |
| | Requested smart jack be installed in customer's suite (not at the minimum point of entry) |
| CSU Required | Each PRI installation requires an external Channel Service Unit (CSU). |
| ISDN PRI Recommendations | For ISDN PRI services, 3Com recommends the settings discussed in the following sections. |
| | Framing Type — The recommended (also the default) configuration is Extended Super Frame (ESF). |
| | |
| | The multi-frame formats F4, F12 (D4 or SF), and F72 are also supported. |
| | |
| | supported. Zero Code Suppression — The recommended (also the default) |

Recommended:

- With 3 digit extensions 100-499, the last three digits of the DID/DNIS codes should be 100-499.
- With 4 digit extensions 1000-4999, the last four digits of the DID/DNIS codes should be 1000-4999.
- Line Hunting Sequence 3Com recommends that the telephone company start with channel one and hunt upward for incoming calls. This works well with NBX systems, because they start at the highest channel number and hunt down for outgoing calls. Verify which services are available from the telephone company.
- Supported Telephone Central Office Switch Protocols NBX system ISDN PRI services support the following central office switch protocols:
 - AT&T 5ESS Custom
 - DMS Custom
 - National ISDN NI-1/NI-2
- Caller ID by Name If you configure your T1 Digital Line Card for ISDN PRI operation, you can subscribe with your telephone service provider for caller ID by name service, but only if your telephone service provider uses National ISDN-2 or AT&T 5ESS Custom.

ISDN BRIBefore you start to install a BRI circuit, collect all of the following
information:

- All telephone numbers to be activated
- Circuit ID
- Carrier's testing department name and telephone numbers
- Carrier's circuit provisioning department names and numbers
- Carrier's account representative account information

| ISDN BRI Recommendations | When you work with the telephone company to install an ISDN BRI circuit, 3Com recommends the parameters discussed in the following sections. |
|-----------------------------|--|
| | Interface — The BRI connection supplied by the telephone company must terminate at an S/T interface. Connections terminating at the U interface are not supported. |
| | Point-to-Point and Point-to-Multipoint — Both point-to-point and point-to-multipoint configurations are supported. |
| | The appropriate TEI (Terminal Endpoint Identifier) must be entered when configuring the BRI card. Typically, Automatic TEI assignment is used on Point-to-Multipoint lines. For Point-to-Point lines, set the TEI value to 0 (zero). |
| | By default the system is configured to use Automatic TEI assignment. Thus, if the line provided is Point-to-Point, this will typically mean the TEI has to be set to 0 (zero) when configuring. |
| | DDI/MSN Applications — For DDI/MSN, 3Com recommends that you order telephone numbers that easily fit in the NBX system numbering plan. If possible, use 3 or 4 digit DDI/MSN codes, which allow for simple dial plan implementation. |
| | With 3 digit extensions 100-499, the last three digits of the DDI/MSN codes should be 100-499. |
| | With 4 digit extensions 1000-4999, the last four digits of the DDI/MSN codes should be 1000-4999. |
| | Supported Telephone Central Office Switch Protocols — NBX system ISDN BRI services support the ETSI central office switch protocol. |
| | |

192 APPENDIX B: CIRCUIT PROVISIONING

Guidelines for Connecting Remote Audio Devices

| This appendix provides guidelines for connecting a remote audio device to an NBX System. The remote audio device can be a 3Com Telephone, an Analog Line Card, an Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA), an Analog Terminal Card, a Digital Line Card, or other product. |
|---|
| For instructions on configuring an NBX device to connect over a broadband connection (for example, a 3Com Telephone in your home, |

broadband connection (for example, a 3Com Telephone in your home, behind a DSL Router) see "Adding a Remote Telephone" in Chapter 2 of the NBX Administrator's Guide.

The guidelines provided are for a single device, but the issues discussed can be scaled to cover multiple devices. The guidelines include the following topics.

- <u>Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU)</u>
- <u>Communication Latency Requirements</u>
- <u>Bandwidth Requirements</u>
- Installing Fax Machines with ATAs

Maximum Transfer
Unit (MTU)The system requires that the interconnection mechanism provide an
apparent MTU of a full size IEEE 802.1 packet (1514 bytes of information
plus 4 byte CRC). The interconnection can fragment packets into smaller
frames but *must* reassemble the packets prior to delivery to any NBX
device. The NBX devices do not presently support IP (or other) packet
fragmentation and reassembly.

| Communication Latency Requirements | The interconnect latency requirements can be broken into two main categories: large packet latency and small packet latency. Depending on the configuration of the interconnection mechanism, these latencies can be quite different, often due to the interconnection device applying compression to the packets. The compression function can increase exponentially with packet size, resulting in very long delays for large packets. |
|--|--|
| Large Packet Latency | The round-trip latency on large packets, 300 bytes to full MTU, must be less than 450 ms. The system will support an occasional packet delay of 450 to 900 ms, but each such delay will cause retries and thus affect bandwidth and performance. If delays in excess of 450 ms occur at a "high rate" (more than one such delay every three seconds) then system degradation can occur, resulting in problems initializing (downloading devices) as well as sluggish performance of system features. |
| Small Packet Latency | The round-trip latency on small packets, from 64 bytes up to the large packet size, should be less than 150 ms, to maintain a high performance level (this is especially significant in the quality of user conversations). Longer latency will not cause system failure but can result in "talk-over" situations within a conversation. Additionally, the longer latency can cause the system to appear sluggish during user interaction (dialing, answering, etc.). |

| Bandwidth Requirements | The interconnect bandwidth requirements depend on the selected audio compression and system configuration [Layer 2 or Layer 3 (IP)] topology. |
|---|---|
| ì | NBX default audio settings deliver optimum audio quality. Any change to default audio settings affects audio quality. |
| Layer 2 Mulaw (G.711) Audio (Normal Setting) | The interconnection bandwidth requirements for a device configured as a Layer 2 device running G.711 audio for each party in a conversation requires a maximum of 73 Kbps. Thus, a point-to-point call requires this peak bandwidth in each direction, while a 3-party conference requires a peak of 219 Kbps in one direction. For more information, see <u>"Notes on Bandwidth Requirements"</u> later in this appendix. |
| Layer 3 Mulaw (G.711) Audio | The overhead for running a device as a Layer 3 device results in a maximum bandwidth requirement of 86 Kbps per party in the conversation. Thus, a point-to-point call requires this peak bandwidth in each direction, while a 3-party conference requires a peak of 258 Kbps in one direction. For more information, see <u>"Notes on Bandwidth Requirements"</u> later in this chapter. |
| Layer 2 ADPCM Audio (Reduced Bandwidth Setting) | The interconnection bandwidth requirements for a device configured as a Layer 2 device running ADPCM audio for each party in a conversation requires a maximum of 42 Kbps. Thus, a point-to-point call requires this peak bandwidth in each direction, while a 3-party conference requires a peak of 126 Kbps in one direction. For more information, see <u>"Notes on Bandwidth Requirements"</u> later in this chapter. |
| Layer 3 ADPCM Audio (Reduced Bandwidth Setting) | The overhead for running a device as a Layer 3 device results in a maximum bandwidth requirement of 54.7 Kbps per party in the conversation. Thus, a point-to-point call requires this peak bandwidth in each direction, while a 3-party conference requires a peak of 164 Kbps in one direction. See <u>"Notes on Bandwidth Requirements"</u> next. |
| Notes on Bandwidth Requirements | Silence suppression reduces bandwidth requirements on average by 30 to 40 percent. However, do not assume this much bandwidth reduction when determining peak requirements. These bandwidth reduction values do not include link overhead (packet encapsulation, additional bytes for error detection/correction, etc.) which may be added by the specific interconnection device. This overhead is not under the control of the NBX system, but must be added based upon the device specification. |

| Installing Fax Machines with ATAs | When installing a fax machine with a single-port Analog Terminal Adapter, consider the following points: |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| | A fax machine requires twice the bandwidth (160 Kbps) of a voice device. |
| | A fax machine must be configured to use Mulaw compression. |
| | Problems encountered receiving or sending faxes could indicate network traffic issues. |
| | Some PC faxes or modems may not work properly due to the very low latency requirements of such devices. |
| | The most effective way to install a fax machine is to install it using an ATA connected to an uplink card or hub card in the NBX system, or to use a dedicated switch port for the ATA connected to the fax machine. |
| | • Configuring an ATA port for fax operation optimizes the performance for inbound and outbound faxes. If you make a voice call using the ATA device (for example, if you use the telephone portion of the fax machine), the quality of the audio may be affected. If you make a VTL call using the ATA device, the audio may be unusable. |

D OBTAINING SUPPORT FOR YOUR 3COM PRODUCTS

| | 3Com offers product registration, case management, and repair services through <u>eSupport.3com.com</u> . You must have a user name and password to access these services, which are described in this appendix. |
|--|--|
| Register Your Product to Gain Service Benefits | To take advantage of warranty and other service benefits, you must first register your product at: |
| Service Benefits | http://eSupport.3com.com/ |
| | 3Com eSupport services are based on accounts that are created or that you are authorized to access. |
| | |
| Solve Problems | 3Com offers the following support tool: |
| Online | 3Com Knowledgebase — Helps you to troubleshoot 3Com products. This query-based interactive tool is located at: |
| | http://knowledgebase.3com.com |
| | It contains thousands of technical solutions written by 3Com support engineers. |

| Purchase Extended Warranty and Professional Services | To enhance response times or extend your warranty benefits, you can purchase value-added services such as 24x7 telephone technical support, software upgrades, onsite assistance, or advanced hardware replacement. Experienced engineers are available to manage your installation with minimal disruption to your network. Expert assessment and |
|---|--|
| | implementation services are offered to fill resource gaps and ensure the success of your networking projects. For more information on 3Com Extended Warranty and Professional Services, see: |
| | http://www.3com.com/ |
| | Contact your authorized 3Com reseller or 3Com for additional product and support information. See the table of access numbers later in this appendix. |
| Access Software Downloads | You are entitled to <i>bug fix I maintenance releases</i> for the version of software that you initially purchased with your 3Com product. To obtain access to this software, you need to register your product and then use the Serial Number as your login. Restricted Software is available at: |
| | http://eSupport.3com.com/ |
| | To obtain software releases that <i>follow</i> the software version that you originally purchased, 3Com recommends that you buy an Express or Guardian contract, a Software Upgrades contract, or an equivalent support contract from 3Com or your reseller. Support contracts that include software upgrades cover feature enhancements, incremental functionality, and bug fixes, but they do not include software that is released by 3Com as a separately ordered product. Separately orderable software releases and licenses are listed in the 3Com Price List and are available for purchase from your 3Com reseller. |
| Contact Us | 3Com offers telephone, internet, and e-mail access to technical support and repair services. To access these services for your region, use the appropriate telephone number, URL, or e-mail address from the table in the next section. |

Telephone Technical Support and Repair

To obtain telephone support as part of your warranty and other service benefits, you must first register your product at:

http://eSupport.3com.com/

When you contact 3Com for assistance, please have the following information ready:

- Product model name, part number, and serial number
- A list of system hardware and software, including revision level
- Diagnostic error messages
- Details about recent configuration changes, if applicable

To send a product directly to 3Com for repair, you must first obtain a return materials authorization number (RMA). Products sent to 3Com without authorization numbers clearly marked on the outside of the package will be returned to the sender unopened, at the sender's expense. If your product is registered and under warranty, you can obtain an RMA number online at <u>http://eSupport.3com.com/</u>. First-time users must apply for a user name and password.

Telephone numbers are correct at the time of publication. Find a current directory of 3Com resources by region at: http://csoweb4.3com.com/contactus/

| Country | Telephone Number | Country | Telephone Number |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| Asia, Pacific Rim — | - Telephone Technical Support and | l Repair | |
| Australia | 1 800 678 515 | Pakistan | +61 2 9937 5083 |
| Hong Kong | 800 933 486 | Philippines | 1235 61 266 2602 or |
| India | +61 2 9424 5179 or | | 1800 1 888 9469 |
| | 000800 650 1111 | P.R. of China | 800 810 3033 |
| Indonesia | 001 803 61009 | Singapore | 800 6161 463 |
| Japan | 00531 616 439 or | S. Korea | 080 333 3308 |
| ' | 03 3507 5984 | Taiwan | 00801 611 261 |
| Malaysia | 1800 801 777 | Thailand | 001 800 611 2000 |
| New Zealand | 0800 446 398 | | |

You can also obtain support in this region at this e-mail address: <u>apr_technical_support@3com.com</u> Or request a return material authorization number (RMA) by FAX using this number: +61 2 9937 5048

| Country | Telephone Number | Country | Telephone Number |
|--|---|--|--|
| Europe, Middle East, | and Africa — Telephone Technic | cal Support and Repair | |
| From anywhere in these | e regions, call: +44 (0)1442 43552 | 9 | |
| From the following cou | ntries, call the appropriate number | | |
| Austria Belgium Denmark Finland France Germany Hungary Ireland Israel Italy | 01 7956 7124 070 700 770 7010 7289 01080 2783 0825 809 622 01805 404 747 06800 12813 01407 3387 1800 945 3794 199 161346 | Luxembourg Netherlands Norway Poland Portugal South Africa Spain Sweden Switzerland U.K. | 342 0808128 0900 777 7737 815 33 047 00800 441 1357 707 200 123 0800 995 014 9 021 60455 07711 14453 08488 50112 0870 909 3266 |
| You can also obtain su | oport in this region using this URL: | http://emea.3com.com/suppor | t/email.html |
| Latin America — Tele | phone Technical Support and Re | epair | |
| Antigua Argentina Aruba Bahamas Barbados Belize Bermuda Bonaire Brazil Cayman Chile Colombia Costa Rica Curacao | 1 800 988 2112 0 810 444 3COM 1 800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 52 5 201 0010 1 800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 0800 13 3COM 1 800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 | Guatemala Haiti Honduras Jamaica Martinique Mexico Nicaragua Panama Paraguay Peru Puerto Rico Salvador Trinidad and Tobago Uruguay Venezuela | AT&T +800 998 2112 57 1 657 0888 AT&T +800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 571 657 0888 01 800 849CARE AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 54 11 4894 1888 AT&T +800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 1 800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 |
| Ecuador Dominican Republic | AT&T +800 998 2112 AT&T +800 998 2112 | Virgin Islands | 57 1 657 0888 |
| Dominican Republic You can also obtain su | AT&T +800 998 2112 oport in this region in the following | g ways: | 57 1 657 0888 |
| Dominican Republic You can also obtain su | AT&T +800 998 2112 | g ways: | 57 1 657 0888 |
| Dominican Republic You can also obtain su Spanish speakers, en | AT&T +800 998 2112 oport in this region in the following | y ways: at/support/form.html | 57 1 657 0888 |

All locations:Network Jacks; Wired or Wireless Network Interface Cards:1 847-262-0070All other 3Com products:1 800 876 3266

INDEX

Numbers

10BASE-T Hub and Uplink Card 40 1102 Business Telephone specifications 180 1105 Attendant Console specifications 183 2101 Basic Telephone connecting 108 specifications 182 2102 Business Telephone connecting 108 specifications 180 3100 Entry Telephone connecting 108 license 53 light patterns 114 manually configuring 107 PoE power rating 185 specifications 185 3101 Basic Telephone connecting 108 license 54 PoE power rating 181 specifications 181 3102 Business Telephone connecting 108 license 54 PoE power rating 179 specifications 179 3103 Manager's Telephone connecting 108 license 54 PoE power rating 185 specifications 185 3105 Attendant Console creating labels 122 license 54 PoE power rating 182 specifications 182 3106C and 3107C Cordless Telephones license 54 range 113 3106C Cordless Telephone

installation guidelines 113, 114 specifications 183 3107C Cordless Telephone installation guidelines 113, 114 specifications 184 3C10116D T1 assigning IP address 161 3C10165D E1 assigning IP address 161 **3Com Ethernet Power Source** powering attendant console 118 powering non-PE phones 90, 109, 132 powering PE phones 90, 109, 132 3Com Knowledgebase tool 197 3Com Network Jack to NBX Phone Power Module 90, 108 3Com Professional Services 198 3Com resources, directory 199 3Com Telephone Local Configuration Application 107 802.3af 64 adapter for non-PE phones 90, 108 powering an attendant console 118 powering non-PE phones 90, 108 powering PE telephones 90, 108, 132

Α

AC adapter for telephones, part number 107 Access buttons 44 ACT E1 status light 39 T1 status light 36 ACT status light NBX V3000 23 adding Analog Line Card 86 Analog Terminal Card 87 Attendant Console 116 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 136 E1 Digital Line Card 140 T1 Digital Line Card 146 telephones 103 always open

ISDN connection 162 analog devices Analog Line Card 86 Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 42 Analog Terminal Card 41, 87 connecting 127 Analog Line Card auto discovering 123 description of 32 specifications 175 status lights (LEDs) 32 Analog Line Ports (FX0), NBX V3000 23 Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) adding 131 specifications 177 Analog Terminal Card 41 adding 128 connecting analog devices 127 description of 41 specifications 177 status lights (LEDs) 42 anti-static grounding strap 79 ATA PoE power rating 177 ATA (FXS) port, NBX V3000 23 Attendant Console adding 116 Auto Discover 120 connecting the power adapter 117 description of 45 extension mapping 121 PoE power rating 182 specifications 183 Auto Discover Analog Line Cards 123 Analog Terminal Cards 94 attendant console 120 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 137 ConneXtions gateways 92 E1 Digital Line Card 141 enabling and disabling 96 pcXset Soft Telephones 92 T1 Digital Line Card 147 telephones 103

В

bandwidth 10 Mbps LAN 64 fax machine requirements 196 low-bandwidth devices 100 low-bandwidth NBX telephone operation 161 routing devices 100

telephone requirements 64 **Basic Telephone** PoE power rating 181 battery 170 BOOTP 83 brackets NBX 100 chassis 77 NBX Gateway Chassis 79 SuperStack 3 Call Processor 78 bridged extensions overview 164 **BRI-ST Digital Line Card** description of 39 inserting (caution) 138 installing BRI-ST lines 62 specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 40 bug fixes 198 Business Telephone connecting telephone lines (caution) 63 description of 44 Business Telephone, 3102 PoE power rating 179

С

cables, bare wire-end 39 CALL E1 status light 38 T1 status light 35 Call Processor installing (SuperStack 3 NBX) 78 IP address 159 IP address for telephones 159 providing Call Processor IP address to devices 154 status lights (LEDs) NBX 100 28 NBX V3000 22 NBX V5000 24 SuperStack 3 NBX 24 CARD T1 status light 35 chassis brackets NBX 100 77 NBX Gateway Chassis 79 SuperStack 3 Call Processor 78 number of, in NBX 100 system 27 specifications 174 wall-mount dimensions for NBX 100 77 CO E1 status light 38

T1 status light 34 COM1 and COM2 ports NBX 100 29 NBX V5000 25 Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) 63 conference call multicast addresses 100 configuring a line card port 97 configuring IP for subnetworks 152 IP On-the-Fly 154, 156 standard 152 configuring network devices Attendant Console 152 Call Processor 152 NBX telephones 152 connecting a computer to the telephone 112 power adapter to a telephone 90, 107 power adapter to an attendant console 117 telephone to the LAN 109 Connection Assistant 197 ConneXtions and Auto Discover 92 configuration guidelines 161 maximum number of ports 50 cooling, environmental prerequisites 62 cordless telephones 41, 127 base station installation 113, 115 installation guidelines 113, 114, 115 max number 113, 115 proximity 113, 114 range 113, 115 CTI (Computer Telephony Integration) 17, 63

D

DCH E1 status light 38 T1 status light 35 DDI (Direct Dialing Inward) services dial plan configuration (BRI) 136 dial plan configuration (E1) 140 device licenses 53, 54 DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) BOOTP 153, 155 configuring IP with 152 configuring network devices 153 multiple subnetworks 153 non-support by Call Processor 83 overview 152 dial plan configuration file DDI/MSN services for BRI 136 DDI/MSN services for E1 140

DID services for T1 146 translator entries for BRI 136 translator entries for E1 140 translator entries for T1 146 DID (Direct Inward Dialing) services dial plan configuration (T1) 146 Digital Line Cards, BRI-ST specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 40 Digital Line Cards, E1 specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 37 Digital Line Cards, ordering lines for 62 Digital Line Cards, T1 specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 34, 38 Direct Dialing Inward (DDI) services dial plan configuration (BRI) 136 dial plan configuration (E1) 140 Direct Inward Dialing (DID) services dial plan configuration (T1) 146 T1 146 directory of 3Com resources 199 disk mirroring overview 79 DNLD E1 status light 38 status light 35 documentation for the product 17 documentation conventions international 18 notice icons 18 DSP E1 status light 39 T1 status light 35 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) BOOTP 153, 155 configuring IP with 152 configuring network devices 153 multiple subnetworks 153 non-support by Call Processor 83 overview 152

E

E1 Digital Line Card description of 36 inserting (caution) 142 installing E1 lines 62 specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 37 E911, ISDN PRI signaling 146 electrical prerequisites 61 e-mail support 198 e-mail technical support, Asia and Pacific Rim 199 emergency dialing 146 engineering services 198 Entry Telephone manually configuring 107 PoE power rating 185 environmental prerequisites 61 Ethernet 802.1P 65 Ethernet 802.1Q 65 Ethernet port NBX 100 84 NBX V3000 84 Ethernet, multicast addresses 100 Express services contract 198 extended warranty options 198 extensions, mapping to attendant console 121 external devices, connecting to 64 external paging amplifier, connector specifications 174

F

fax machine connecting with ATA 88, 196 Group-3 41, 127 lines needed for 63 FCC registration numbers 175, 176 rules 209, 210 features 3Com Basic telephone 44 3Com Business Telephones 44 Analog Line Card 32 Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 42 Analog Terminal Card 41 Attendant Console 45 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 39 E1 Digital Line Card 36 Hub Card 40 NBX 6-Slot Chassis 27 NBX Gateway Chassis 29 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor 24 T1 Digital Line Card 33 Uplink Card 40 FXO MAC Address NBX V3000 74

G

Group 0 devices 53 Group 1 devices 54 Group 2 devices 54 Guardian services contract 198

Η

Hub Card specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 41

l

IEEE 802.3af 64 incoming calls DDI/MSN for BRI-ST 136 DDI/MSN for E1 140 DID 147 input voltage MOH 22, 25, 28 installation guidelines cordless telephones 113, 114 installation requirements electrical 61 environmental 61 physical 62 internal backplane 27 internet support 198 IP configuring IP On-the-Fly addresses 156 configuring line card port settings 159 connectivity requirements for NBX NetSet utility 80 NBX default settings 83 operating modes 155 telephone settings configuring automatically 159 configuring with NBX NetSet utility 157 provided by the Call Processor 159 IP address assigning to digital line cards 161 providing Call Processor IP address to devices 154 IP Precedence 65 IP ToS 65 ISDN remote telephone connection 162 ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network) 64 ISDN PRI signaling E911 connectivity 146 ISDN router, filtering multicasts 100

Κ

Keyset mode, description 96

Knowledgebase 197

L

LAN Connections NBX 100 84 NBX V3000 84 LEDs Analog Line Card 32 Analog Terminal Card 42 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 40 Call Processor NBX 100 28 NBX V3000 22 NBX V5000 24 E1 Digital Line Card 37 Hub Card 41 Single-Port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 43 T1 Digital Line Card 34, 38 Uplink Card 41 Legacy Link Blades 45 effects on NBX 100 45 license keys 198 line card port overview 123 LNK E1 status light 39 T1 status light 36 LNK/SPEED status lights NBX V3000 23 local telephone service 62 LUI 107

Μ

MAC address 3C10114 75 NBX V3000 analog ports 74 maintenance releases 198 Manager's Telephone PoE power rating 185 memory upgrade and voice mail 53 V3000 53 Meridian 45 MOH max input voltage 22, 25, 28 MSN (Multi Subscriber Numbering) services BRI 136 E1 140 Multi Subscriber Numbering (MSN) services BRI 136 E1 140

music on hold max input voltage 22, 25, 28 music on hold (MOH) adjusting volume 99 connecting an audio source 99 device description 64 jack 99 multicast addresses 100

Ν

NAPT 122, 163 NBX T1 Digital Line Cards 145 NBX 100 Call Processor adjusting music on hold volume 99 installing 75 rack-mounting 75 status lights (LEDs) 28 NBX 100 system hardware components 24 NBX 100 voltage safety warnings 67 NBX Gateway Chassis and cards 29 NBX NetSet utility, connectivity requirements 80 NBX Power Splitter with attendant console 118 with telephone 90, 109, 132 NBX system BRI-ST Digital Line Cards 135 E1 Digital Line Cards 139 installation questions 63 unpacking 74 NBX V3000 MAC address 74 NBX V3000 Call Processor status lights (LEDs) 22 NBX V5000 Call Processor status lights (LEDs) 24 NCP E1 status light 39 T1 status light 35 Network Address Port Translation 122, 163 Network Jack PoE 90, 108 Nortel Norstar 45

0

obtaining technical support 198 online problem solving 197 overloading 122, 163

Ρ

paging connector 29, 99, 174 external amplifier for 174 PBX mode, description 96 PFT connector NBX V3000 23 PoE 64 adapter for non-PE phones 90, 108 powering an attendant console 118 powering non-PE phones 90, 108 powering PE telephones 90, 108, 132 PoE, power rating 3100 185 3101 181 3102 179 3103 185 3105 182 ATA 177 POST E1 status light 38 T1 status light 34 POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service) 64 POTS Status, ATA (LEDs) 43 power brick for telephones, part number 107 Power Fail Transfer (PFT) port Analog Line Card 86 international support 60 Power over Ethernet 64, 108 powering an attendant console 118 powering non-PE phones 90, 108 powering PE telephones 90, 108, 132 private IP network 83 product documentation 17 product registration 197, 198 Professional Services from 3Com 198 purchasing license keys 198 purchasing software upgrades 198

R

rack-mounting NBX 100 Call Processor 76 NBX chassis 62 NBX system 62 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor 78 range cordless telephones 113, 115 range, cordless telephones 113 redundant power supply chassis 31 registering your product 197, 198, 199 remote telephone, adding 122 repair authorization number by FAX, Asia and Pacific Rim 199 repair services 198 repair support for Latin America 200 repair support for US and Canada 200 repair support, Europe, Middle East, and Africa 200 replacing NCP battery 170 Restricted Software 198 return authorization number (RMA) 199 Ringer Equivalency Number 175 Ringer Equivalency Number (REN) 176 RMA numbers 199 routers, low-bandwidth 100

S

safety information English 67 French 70 German 72 sending products to 3Com for repair 199 service benefits 197, 199 services, repair 198 silence suppression 65 Single-Port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) connecting 88 description of 42 installing fax machines with 196 specifications 177 status lights 43 software upgrades contract 198 solving problems online 197 specifications 1102 Business Telephone 180 1105 Attendant Console 183 2101 Basic Telephone 182 2102 Business Telephone 180 3100 Entry Telephone 185 3101 Basic Telephone 181 3102 Business Telephone 179 3103 Manager's Telephone 185 3105 Attendant Console 182 3106C Cordless Telephone 183 3107C Cordless Telephone 184 6-slot chassis 174 Analog Line Card 175 Analog Terminal Card 177 Attendant Console 183 Basic Telephone (Model 2101) 183 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 178 Business Telephone (Model 1102) 178 Business Telephone (Model 2102) 180

Business Telephone (Model 2102-IR) 180 E1 Digital Line Card 178 government approvals 172 Hub Card 178 NBX 100 Call Processor 174 NBX Gateway Chassis 174 Single-Port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 177 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor 173 SuperStack 3 NBX Gateway Chassis 174 T1 Digital Line Card 178 telephone (Model 1102) 178 telephone (Model 2101) 183 telephone (Model 2102) 180, 183 telephone (Model 2102-IR) 180, 183 Uplink Card 179 status lights (LEDs) Analog Line Card 32 Analog Terminal Card 42 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 40 E1 Digital Line Card 37 Hub Card 41 NBX 100 28 NBX V3000 22 NBX V5000 24 Single-Port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 43 T1 Digital Line Card 34, 38 Uplink Card 41 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor adjusting music on hold volume 99 description of 24 installing 78 rack-mounting 78 SuperStack 3 NBX system hardware components 24 support, e-mail 198 support, internet 198 support, technical 198 surge suppression telephone lines (recommendation) 62 telephones (caution) 61 system ID V3000 24 system specifications Analog Line Card 175 Analog Terminal Card 177 Attendant Console 183 Basic Telephone (Model 3101) 183 BRI-ST Digital Line Card 178 Business Telephone (Model 1102) 178 Business Telephone (Model 2102) 180 Business Telephone (Model 2102-IR) 180 E1 Digital Line Card 178 government approvals 172

Hub Card 178 NBX 100 Call Processor 174 NBX Gateway Chassis 174 NBX V3000 Call Processor 173 Single-Port Analog Terminal Adapter (ATA) 177 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor 173 SuperStack 3 NBX Gateway Chassis 174 T1 Digital Line Card 178 telephone (Model 1102) 178 telephone (Model 2102) 180, 183 telephone (Model 2102-IR) 180, 183 telephone (Model 3101) 183 Uplink Card 179

Т

T1 Digital Line Card adding 146 description of 33 installing T1 lines 62 specifications 178 status lights (LEDs) 34, 38 T1 Digital Line Cards 145 table of 3Com support contact numbers 198 TAPI (Telephony Application Programming Interface) requirements for 63 technical support, Asia and Pacific Rim 199 technical support, Europe, Middle East, and Africa 200 telephone adding 103 analog 41, 127 Auto Discover 103 connecting the power adapter 90, 107 connecting to the LAN 109 cordless 41, 127 local service for 63 Model 2101 Basic Telephone 44 telephone initialization 3100 114 telephone IP settings configuration by Call Processor 159 configuring automatically 159 telephone lines, connecting (caution) 63 Telephone Local User Interface utility 107 telephone support 198 telephone technical support 198 telephone technical support for Latin America 200 telephone technical support for US and Canada 200 telephone technical support, Asia and Pacific Rim 199 telephone technical support, Europe, Middle East, and Africa 200

208 INDEX

telephones connecting 107 telephony IP settings line card ports 159 third-party devices 45 TLC 107 toll-quality audio 64 tools and equipment required for installation 66 ToS, default value 65 troubleshooting 166

U

unpacking NBX system 74 Uplink Card description of 40 specifications 179 status lights (LEDs) 41 uplink ports NBX 100 Call Processor 29 USB port NBX V5000 25

V

ventilation requirements NBX 100 Chassis 62 SuperStack 3 NBX Chassis 62 voltage safety warnings 67 volume, adjusting music on hold NBX 100 Call Processor 99 SuperStack 3 NBX Call Processor 99

W

wall-mounting NBX 100 chassis dimensions template 77 warranty registration 197

FCC CLASS A VERIFICATION STATEMENT

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manuals, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will have to correct the interference at his or her own expense.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by 3Com could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. This unit bears a label which contains the FCC registration number and Ringer Equivalency Number (REN). If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

This equipment uses the following standard FCC Part 68-compliant jacks and plugs for network connections:

USOC RJ11C for connecting to the telephone network

USOC RJ45 and BNC connectors for connecting to the local area network

This equipment contains FCC-compliant modular jacks. It is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using compatible modular plugs and cabling which comply with the requirements of FCC Part 68 rules.

The Ringer Equivalency Number (REN) is used to compute the number of devices that can be connected to a telephone line. An excessive REN value on a line can result in the devices not ringing in response to incoming calls. In most, but not all areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of a product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is separately shown on the label.

In the unlikely event that this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company can temporarily disconnect your service. The telephone company will try to warn you in advance of any such disconnection, but if advance notice is not practical, it may disconnect the service first and notify you as soon as possible afterwards. In the event that such a disconnection is deemed necessary you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

From time to time, the telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures which could affect the operation of this equipment. If this occurs, the telephone company is required to provide you with advance notice so you can make the modifications necessary to maintain uninterrupted service

Repairs to this equipment can be made only by the manufacturer or its authorized agents. In the event that this equipment requires service, contact your equipment vendor or the manufacturer, 3Com Corporation.

NBX Telephones are compatible with inductively coupled hearing aids.

If trouble is experienced with this NBX equipment, for repair or warranty information, please contact 3Com Corporation, 350 Campus Drive, Marlborough, MA 01752-3064, USA, Telephone: 800-NET-3Com or visit the web site at www.3com.com. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this NBX equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

This equipment is capable of providing users access to interstate providers of operator services through the use of access codes. Modification of this equipment by call aggregators to block access to dialing codes is a violation of the Telephone Operators Consumers Act of 1990.

INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

NOTICE: The Industry Canada (IC) label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets the telecommunications network protective, operational, and safety requirements as prescribed in the appropriate Terminal Equipment Technical Requirements document(s). The department does not guarantee the equipment will work to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. The user should be aware that compliance with the above conditions might not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be coordinated by a representative designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas. **Caution:** Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electrical inspection authority or electrician, as appropriate.

NOTICE: The Ringer Equivalency Number (REN) assigned to each terminal device provides an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the ringer equivalency numbers of all devices does not exceed 5.

Important: Read before using this product.

3COM END USER SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT TERMS AND CONDITIONS AND LIMITED WARRANTY

READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE 3Com PRODUCT ACCOMPANYING THIS AGREEMENT (THE "PRODUCT"). BY USING THE PRODUCT YOU ARE ACCEPTING AND AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU ARE NOT WILLING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, YOU SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THE UNUSED PRODUCT AND PACKAGING TO THE DEALER THAT SOLD THE PRODUCT TO YOU, AND YOU WILL RECEIVE A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE. THIS AGREEMENT REPRESENTS THE ENTIRE AGREEMENT CONCERNING THE PRODUCT BETWEEN YOU AND 3Com CORPORATION ("3Com"), AND IT SUPERSEDES ANY PRIOR PROPOSAL, REPRESENTATION, OR UNDERSTANDING CONCERNING THE PRODUCT BETWEEN YOU AND 3Com.

3Com and you, the purchaser, agree that the following terms and conditions (sometimes referred to herein as this "Agreement") shall govern your purchase of the Product from an authorized 3Com dealer. The term "Product" includes (i) the equipment accompanying these terms and conditions and (ii) the software included in such equipment or otherwise furnished to you in connection with your purchase and/or use of such equipment (the "Software"). This Agreement covers Products for use only in the United States and Canada.

<u>Software License</u>.

- (a) <u>License Grant</u>. Subject to the terms and conditions contained herein, 3Com grants you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive license to use the Software, in object code form only, for your internal business needs on a single Product in accordance with the accompanying system documentation (the "Documentation"). This license grant shall be limited to use with the equipment for which the Software was obtained, or, on a temporary basis, on back-up equipment when the original equipment is inoperable. Use of the Software on multiple processors is prohibited unless otherwise agreed to in writing by 3Com.
- (b) <u>Restrictions</u>. Except as expressly authorized by this Agreement or under applicable law, you are not permitted to copy or use the Software in any manner. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, you agree that you will not do any of the following: (i) decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble, or otherwise reduce the Software to a human-perceivable form; (ii) transfer the Software from one computer to another, including other servers and/or other storage devices; (iii) transfer the Software to any other party, except when transferring it with the Product in accordance with the terms of this Agreement; or (iv) modify, adapt, translate, rent, sublicense, lease, loan, resell for profit, distribute, network or create derivative works based upon the Software or any part thereof.
- (c) <u>Ownership of Software</u>. Title to and ownership of the Software shall remain with 3Com and its suppliers. This license is not a sale of the Software or any copy.
- (d) <u>Third-Party Applications</u>. Any third-party supplier of computer programs included in the Software is a third-party beneficiary of the provisions of this Section 1, and such third party may protect its rights in the Software against violations of this license.
- (e) <u>Confidentiality</u>. You agree to maintain the Software in confidence and to not disclose the Software to any third party without the express written consent of 3Com. You further agree to take all reasonable precautions to preclude access of unauthorized persons to the Software.

(f) <u>Termination</u>. 3Com may terminate this Section 1 and the licenses granted hereby upon the breach by you of any the provisions of this Section 1. Upon such termination, you agree to return the Product, including the Software and all copies and portions thereof, to 3Com.

2 LIMITED WARRANTY

HARDWARE: 3Com warrants to the end user ("Customer") that this hardware product will be substantially free from material defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for the length of time stated in the Warranty sheet that is shipped in the box with your 3Com hardware product, from the date of purchase from 3Com or its authorized reseller.

3Com's sole obligation under this express warranty shall be, at 3Com's option and expense, to repair the defective product or part, deliver to Customer an equivalent product or part to replace the defective item, or if neither of the two foregoing options is reasonably available, refund to Customer the purchase price paid for the defective product. All products that are replaced will become the property of 3Com. Replacement products or parts may be new or reconditioned. 3Com warrants any replaced or repaired product or part for ninety (90) days from shipment, or the remainder of the initial warranty period, whichever is longer.

SOFTWARE: 3Com warrants to Customer that each software program licensed from it, except as noted below, will, if operated as directed in the user documentation, substantially achieve the functionality described in the user documentation for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of purchase from 3Com or its authorized reseller. No updates or upgrades are provided under this warranty. 3Com's sole obligation under this express warranty shall be, at 3Com's option and expense, to refund the purchase price for the software product or replace the software product with software which meets the requirements of this warranty as described above. Customer assumes responsibility for the selection of the appropriate programs and associated reference materials.

3Com makes no warranty or representation that its software products will meet Customer's requirements or work in combination with any hardware or software products provided by third parties, that the operation of the software products will be uninterrupted or error free, or that all defects in the software products will be corrected. For any third-party products listed in the 3Com software product documentation or specifications as being compatible, 3Com will make reasonable efforts to provide compatibility, except where the non-compatibility is caused by a "bug" or defect in the third party's product or from use of the software product not in accordance with 3Com's published specifications or the user manual.

THIS 3COM PRODUCT MAY INCLUDE OR BE BUNDLED WITH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE. THE WARRANTY PROVISIONS OF THIS DOCUMENT DO NOT APPLY TO SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE. IF A SEPARATE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT HAS BEEN PROVIDED FOR SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE, USE OF THAT SOFTWARE WILL BE GOVERNED BY THAT AGREEMENT. FOR ANY APPLICABLE WARRANTY, PLEASE REFER TO THE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT GOVERNING THE USE OF THAT SOFTWARE.

OBTAINING WARRANTY SERVICE: Customer must contact a 3Com Corporate Service Center or an Authorized 3Com Service Center within the applicable warranty period to obtain warranty service authorization. Dated proof of purchase from 3Com or its authorized reseller may be required. A User Service Order (USO), Return Material Authorization (RMA), or Service Repair Order (SRO) number will be issued. This number must be marked on the outside of the package sent to 3Com's Corporate Service Center. The product must be packaged appropriately for safe shipment and sent prepaid. It is recommended that returned products be insured or sent by a method that provides for tracking of the package. Responsibility for loss or damage does not transfer to 3Com until the returned item is received by 3Com. 3Com will retain risk of loss or damage until the item is delivered to Customer. For non-US Customers, the word "prepaid" shall be omitted where this requirement is not permitted by law. The allocation of responsibility for loss or damage stated shall be subject to any mandatory legal requirements.

3Com shall not be responsible for any software, firmware, information, or memory data of Customer contained in, stored on, or integrated with any products returned to 3Com for repair, whether under warranty or not.

WARRANTIES EXCLUSIVE, WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE FOREGOING WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, TERMS OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EITHER IN FACT OR BY OPERATION OF LAW, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES, TERMS OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANT-ABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, CORRESPONDENCE WITH DESCRIPTION, NON-INFRINGEMENT AND QUIET ENJOYMENT, ALL OF WHICH ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. 3COM NEITHER ASSUMES NOR AUTHORIZES ANY OTHER PERSON TO ASSUME FOR IT ANY OTHER LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE, OR USE OF THIS PRODUCT.

3COM SHALL NOT BE LIABLE UNDER THIS WARRANTY IF ITS TESTING AND EXAMINATION DISCLOSE THAT THE ALLEGED DEFECT OR MALFUNCTION IN THE PRODUCT DOES NOT EXIST OR WAS CAUSED BY CUSTOMER'S OR ANY THIRD PERSON'S MISUSE, NEGLECT, IMPROPER INSTALLATION OR TESTING, UNAUTHORIZED ATTEMPTS TO OPEN, REPAIR, OR MODIFY THE PRODUCT, OR ANY OTHER CAUSE BEYOND THE RANGE OF THE INTENDED USE, OR BY ACCIDENT, FIRE, LIGHTNING, POWER CUTS OR OUTAGES, OTHER HAZARDS, OR ACTS OF GOD.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, 3COM ALSO EXCLUDES for itself and its licensors and suppliers ANY LIABILITY, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), FOR INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR FOR LOSS OF REVENUE or profits, LOSS OF BUSINESS, loss of information or data, OR OTHER FINANCIAL LOSS ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE, USE, PERFORMANCE, FAILURE, OR INTERRUPTION OF ITS PRODUCTS, even if 3com or its authorized reseller has been advised of the possibility of such damages, AND LIMITS ITS LIABILITY TO REPAIR, REPLACEMENT, OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE paid, AT 3COM'S OPTION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES WILL NOT BE AFFECTED IF ANY REMEDY PROVIDED HEREIN SHALL FAIL OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Some countries, states, or provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or the limitation of incidental or consequential damages for certain products supplied to consumers, or the limitation of liability for death or personal injury, so the above limitations and exclusions may be limited in their application to you. When the implied warranties are not allowed to be excluded in their entirety, they will be limited to the duration of the applicable written warranty. This warranty gives you specific legal rights which may vary depending on local law.

GOVERNING LAW: This Limited Warranty shall be governed by the laws of the State of California, U.S.A., and by the laws of the United States, excluding their conflicts of laws principles. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is hereby excluded in its entirety from application to this Limited Warranty.

Register Online: When you first call 3Com, we will collect customer and product information from you to determine warranty status. You can eliminate this step and speed your access to technical support by registering online at <u>http://eSupport.3com.com/</u>

3Com Corporation

350 Campus Drive Marlborough, MA 01752-3064

North America:

Tel: 800-NET-3Com (1-800-638-3266)

Outside North America: See Appendix D of this guide or <u>www.3com.com</u>